THE HISTORIE OF TREBIZOND,

In foure Bookes.

CHETHAM LIBRARY

By *Tho. Gainſforde* Eſquier.

Quid dignum tanto feret hic promiſſor hiatu?
Sic iuuat indulgere fugacibus horis.



AT LONDON,
Printed for *Tho. Downe* and *Eph. Dawſon.*
1616.

W 1 55

TO
The Right Honorable Countesse Dowager of DERBIE.

RIGHT HONORABLE;

EXperience maketh Ignorance confesse, that the best composed priuate Letters resemble the passage of a Shippe, leauing no print or impression of her course: and the memorie of such an improuident and vnfortunate Man as my selfe, is like spilt abroad Water, neuer to be gathered vp againe. —— *But doe what Contempt and Greatnesse can: this shall outlast a Tombe, and be more glorious then the proudest Epitaph or Structure: Not that there is any thing in the same, otherwise then a Spiders Cobwebbe, fitter to be swept away with a huswiuely hand: But because your Fame may suruiue thereby, and many ages to come demaund, which* Lady *of* DERBY *excited such commemoration? And then the answere shall bee;* Earle Ferdinandos *Widow*, Countesse

DOWAGER *of* DERBY; *who was thus farre beholding to Nature, that* Loue, Beauty, *and* Comlineſſe, *expoſed her as a worke of her choyceſt Storehouſe: who was ſo farre beholding to* Vertue, *that ſhee vnited many Graces, as you ſee a rich Diamond augmented in his luſture by the workmans skilfulneſſe: who was ſo farre beholding to* Fortune, *that ſhee ſheltred vnder the couert of the greateſt and magnificenſt Prince in the World Q.* Elizabeth; *and ſhee ſo ouermantled her with Fauour, that King* Iames *kept her ſtill glorious vnder the ſame: Who was ſo farre beholding to* Prouidence, *that from a ſecond Husbands Worthineſſe and wiſedome, they went arme in arme to the houſe of Perfection, and made it thriue the better vnder the warme roofe of Aboundance: Who was ſo farre beholding to* Honour, *that ſhee affronted the ſtrictneſſe of Law, and from his Maiſties Warrant kept her greatneſſe ſecure: and who was ſo farre beholding to* Fame, *that ſhee trode vpon the ſwelling Serpent* Enuie, *and rayſed good wiſhes from their hearts, who had formerly pretended cauſe of diſtaſting.*

Therefore I can be no contrary amongſt ſo many iuditious obſeruers, but preſume, that ſo great goodneſſe will not be diuerted by any maligne circumſtances; and aſſure my ſelfe, that your Honour *may looke toward mee with a gracious aſpect, or at leaſt in this triuiall abruptneſſe condiſcend to a charitable endurance of mens imperfections: For Wiſedome, or a thriuing Fortune is not bought in the Market, and I amongſt ſome others may well complaine,* ——Fato prudentia minor.

Your Honours humble Obſeruant,

Th. Gainsforde.

The principall matters and Stories contained in these Bookes.

Lib. 1.

THe Story of the Shepheards of *Nagania*. Page. 4.
Marpesias Caue. 13.
Marpesiae Story. 15.
The Shepheards Daughters. 18.
The principall Shepheards. 23.
The story of *Framio*. 47.
Idle men described. 48.
The story of *Rugio* and *Deltona*. 62.

Lib. 2.

The Historie of *Mengrelius* and *Kalucki*. 86.
The History of *Xantippus* and *Encelidon*. 104.
The description of *Delphos*. 116.
The Oracle it selfe, or Prophesie. 124.
How *Celida* and *Perinthum* saued the Empresse Children. 130.
The story of *Praxus* and *Menedemus*. 144.
The story of *Cleonidas* and *Perinthum*. 151.

Lib. 3.

The triumph at *Deltonas* discouery. 172.
The History of *Artabazes* and *Olmus*. 180.
The setling of a Gouernement in a Kingdome. 183.
The story of *Gestarius*. 193.
The story of *Cleonidas* and *Artabazes*. 201.
Anzitemus marieth *Brizaca*, formerly called *Montanus* and *Deltona*. 208.
The story of *Artabanus* and *Astiages*. 209.
The story of *Medormus* and *Gliranda*. 213.
The Combat betweene *Anzitemus* and *Medormus*. 221.
The story of *Ormisdates* and *Damasioris*. 233.
The story of *Anzitemus* and *Astiages*. 245.

The Contents.

Lib. 4.

Anzitemus his owne Storie. Page. 261.
A King described. 263.
Actabazes Father of *Anzitemus*, slaine by *Cleonidas* the Pirat. 269.
The storie of *Cleonidas* and *Artaxata*. 275.
The description of a Giants naturall Disposition. 277.
The storie of *Sagarenus* and *Artaxata*. 280.
Armenia of *Armenus*. 287.
Roxanas description. 291.
The commendation of Conference. 295.
Anzitemus King of *Armenia*. 300.
The storie of *Trezoboro* the Emperours sonne of *Trebizond*. 303.
Trezoboro returneth to *Trebizond*. 308.
The story of *Kalucki* and *Mullumalla*. 310.
Kaluski Emperour of *Tartary*. 313.
Kalucki challengeth *Trebizond*. 326.
The Battaile betweene *Mengrelius* & *Kalucki* two brothers. 330.
The story of *Mengrelius* and *Trezoboro*, father and sonne. 339.
Mengrelius slaine by *Anzitemus* and *Trezoboro* Emperour, as in the Propheſie. 345.
The story of *Cleonidas* after the Battaile at Sea with *Anzitemus*. 354.
Cleonidas death. 359.

FINIS.

The first Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.

SO long continued the fight betwixt the valiant *Anzitemus*, and the Arch-pirat *Cleonidas*, that extremitie wondred to be maintained, and the night (as a common decider of Controuersies) hasted for very pittie to determine the furie, not remembring what terrour her haste would adde vnto the furie: whereupon *Anzitemus* enraged to be disappoynted, commaunded to grapple, and the taske imposed, chained their Barkes togeather; the effect whereof, produced the lamentable Stratagems, wherewith Confusion, Slaughter, and Death, terrifieth the beholders: For the fighters with Swords seemde to play in the choyse either to deuide the Body

The Battaile betwixt Anzitemus and Cleonidas at Sea.

from the Head, or seperate the Members from the Body: Such as vsed Pikes, might either wound or kill; such as threw Stones, either braine, or endanger; & such as trusting to their strength durst cloose, either strangle, or tosse ouerboard: Thus were some throwne into the Sea, some stifled in the Shippes, some slaine outright, some irrecouerably wounded, some thronged to death, some sprauling halfe dead, & some fainting ouerwearied; none escaping one mischiefe or other; and all confounded, because they saw all things confused: the faythlesse hearted trembling before death, as dismayed at their fellowes outcryes: the valiant hoping to liue to reuenge their companions wrongs: At last, Destruction lifted vp her horrible countenaunce, as if shee meant to distract them with this assurance, that neither Pollicie, nor Endeuours could direct to any way of securitie; which when *Anzitemus* (euen betwixt the contraries of Pittie and Rage) apprehended, hee then cryed out: Let all cease; and *Cleonidas* and I determine the controuersie.

But, whether *Cleonidas* despayring in the successe, stomaked the misfortune, or remembring his fault conceited the reuenge; or impatient at the difficultie, forgate the meanes of redresse; or enraging to be ouer-mastered, became absolutely desperate: Hee put in practise more feare and more terrour: with his owne hands like a hired Seruant of mischiefe setting the Ships on fire,

A desperate action of Cleonidas.

fire, and commaunding the reſt of his partie to heaw them a peeces, or otherwiſe to ſhift for themſelues. This was ſo well liked of the Mariners, and ſo ſoone performed, that you would haue imagined, Confuſion meant to decipher, with what varietie ſhee would entertaine Death: For what with Axes, Hatchets, Sawes, Dragges, Winches, Croes, Engines, and other Inſtruments; the Shippes were ſplitted, ſpoyled, broken, diſioynted, and all to peeces ſhiuered: beſides, the Fire playing the Tiraat, quickly diſſeuered, what before faſtned the maine Beames togeather; herein onely acting the part of a Friende by ſoone „ ridding out of the paine, and concluding (ſeen we „ muſt die) to die with reſolution.

Thus were ſuch interdicted with neceſsitie of ſauing them ſelues, who before ſtriued to intercept others: Thus did vncomfortable Cryes condemne the crueltie of Reuenge; which would not be ſatiſfied without ſo ſmall a maſſacre: Thus were pittifull yelles the laſt teſtimonie, how many hundreds exclaymed on the ambition of men: Thus did horrible Curſes ſound out the wicked mindes of ſuch, as neglected the true vſe of a good Conſcience: Thus were all the cauſes of amazement vnited, to ſhew the formidable effectes of Enrage & Deſpight, ſo that the moſt part periſhed, and very few ſummoned vp new hopes to prolong their liues: Yet had *Anzitemus* this fortune, to light on the hinder quarter of his-

The Ship-wracke of Anzitemus.

enemies Shippe; and if before affrighted with the hideous ſpectacle hee ſtood vncapable of any reſolution, now reduced with the enforced conditions of life, he beſtirred his conſideration to inhibit vnkind and vntimely miſchaunce: whereupon compelled to leaue the ornaments of his vallour, becauſe he was to make vſe of his armes and lightneſſe, he quickly ſtripped himſelfe, and as quickly tooke vp his ſeate on the broken peece, which reſembling ſome Boigh or Sea marke, was no doubt the occaſion he was the better marked. For as the vncomfortable Night finiſhed her progreſſe, the bountie of a ſunſhining Morning layde open her treaſurie, and hee had the choyce of many ſeuerals; faire Weather, ſweete Winde, calme Sea, cleare Ayre; and ſight of a Fiſher-boat; which ſeemed a Meſſenger of life, in regard it approched ſo neere, that he was vnderſtood in craning their helpe; and they helped, when they vnderſtood what he craued: But to ſtrengthen your knowledge in this accident, you muſt alow of ſome circumſtaunce.

The ſtorie of the Shepheards of Nagania.

AFter the Earth like a magnificent Bride had apparrelled her ſelfe in her beautious attyre, the Inhabitants of *Nagania* on the Northren *Caſpian* Shore, (betweene whom the melancholy Winter had compelled a diſcontented ſeperation) began their ſolemne Spring feaſtes, and ſet forward the heards of Sheepe, Goates, and

and greater Cattell to the Downes, which were in a manner purged by the gentle ebbings & flowings of the Sea; where both one and other seemed to make vse of a pleasing theft, pleasing to the Beastes in finding so good a pray as the sweete Grasse affoorded; pleasing to the Earth, in being ordained an instrument of such reliefe; the effect whereof produced, that Riches without Enuie, Good order without Flatterie, Quietnesse without Imperfection, Peace without Intemperance, Plenty without Inordinatnesse, Encrease without Repining, and all other blessings of the Land, as it were in one league combined them selues: Besides, the Sea disbursed a recompence to their industry, which caused them to maintaine certaine Boates to fish with, and euery one according to a well applauded custome watched his course: amongst these *Placandus* (whom yeeres & grauitie had much graced) liued with such loue and liking, that whensoeuer his iourney importuned, some one or other attended the worke in hand, and at this instant bare him company in his fishingnight: so that by Art vnited to industrie (the onely enemies of idlenesse) their nets were filled with great „ store, and their Trunks stored with excellent Fish, „ the dispatch whereof (as vnwilling to tempt prosperitie with an vnnecessary iourney) concluded a returne, had not a sudden cry directed their pittie to regard what they heard, and that detained them to consider, how they might administer

Placandus fishing night.

reliefe, the rather becauſe a man appeared ſitting on a broken piece of a Shippe, neither much diſmayed at ſo great an enemie as death, nor now ſeeming ouer ielous for ſo ſweete a friend as Life: But ſuch as hee was, did their induſtry aſsiſt, their aſsiſtance helpe, their helpe recouer, their recouery welcome to Comfort: now when Comfort came to act her part, like the Sunne, who ſcorning to be checked with euery ſlender Vapour, quickly liſteth vp his glorious head: Feare and paleneſſe was made aſhamed of their wrong diſſeiſure, and he ſeemed the very Sonne of Valoure, and darling of loue.

Anzitemus ſaued by Placandus changeth his name to Montanus

This at the firſt, rayſed a kind of reuerence, wherein they would more orderly haue proceeded, had not a pleaſing vtterance pacefied their importunities to vnderſtande, who hee might be: with his earneſt deſire to take him as hee was, which (ſayth hee) I cannot but preſume on, becauſe I finde ſuch a vnitie of goodneſſe: Bee therefore ſatisfied, that my ſimple trueth telleth you, I am *Montanus* of *Carberia*, vnfortunate in being that I am; and ten times vnfortunate in remembring what I was: meane I confeſſe, but now the meaner by looſing all meanes of my eſtate and liuing, as hauing with ſome ſubſtaunce and friends not eighteene dayes ſince burdoned one ſmall Barke, and after ſome varietie of Stormes within theſe eighteene howers taſted the very bitterneſſe of aduerſitie, which many with the meditation

tation put me in minde of ſome misfortune: But thinges remedileſſe, are paſt care and cure; therefore I will teach my tongue to forget her owne language, and ouermaſter Miſery with an ill reſpected Vertue called Patience.

But *Placandus* tooke an other courſe, and from troubling him with any more queſtions, applyed the ordynary meanes of helpe in ſuch caſes, telling that they were men of Husbandrie and Cattle in the Kingdome of *Nagania*, and not Fiſhers; if then their ſupplyes could ſtand him in ſtead, or eſtates induce him to be one of the companie, hee might be ſure neither to fayle of ſuccour, nor complaine for want: and if my ſelfe ſeeme not leſſe worthy then another, I will welcome thee, and vpon good deſeruing, adde to thy welcome, a reward,

By this time, had *Montanus* youth ſhewed a ſcorne of the miſchiefe, which the Seaes vnmercifulneſſe pretended, and hee remained in ſome extaſie, remembring his owne affayres, but eſpecially, that in ſo remote a place, hee muſt repreſent the fruite of a foraine Land, which the Inhabitants haue no other vſe of, but wondring at: Yet hoping to ſpende out the extreamitie of ſullen conceites with this varietie, and perceiuing the reſt as it were to ſtomacke his ſlackneſſe, that apprehended no ſooner the curteſie propoſed, he preſently opened the treaſurie of the poore, thanked all in generall, and gratified *Placandus*

in

in particular, accepting the kindneſſe with many wiſhes, that his honeſt endeuours might draw on ſucceſſe to confirme him a dutifull ſeruant.

Thus they returned with effectuall diſpatch of their iorney, and extraordinary newes of this aduenture, which ouer a day or two, was willing to participate it ſelfe to the reſt: Yet not in ſo ſlender a manner, but euery one amplified report, as their opinions receiued impreſsion, ſome prayſed his Feature, ſome his Countenance, ſome his vpright Comelineſſe, ſome his well knit Ioynts, ſoms his Demeanour, and ſome his Conſtancie in the affliction; not wanted there others, which ſuppoſed him of better fortune, then his preſent ſhew portraited, ſo that for the time, *Placandus* houſe was neuer empty; many comming to ſee him, many to prayſe him, many to iudge of their prayſes, many not to be beholding to anothers report, many to giue notice, how well they had profited in the Schoole of Ciuilitie, and many to performe Goodneſſe, becauſe Vertue delighteth in action: Amongſt this number, *Coranus* though the laſt, which came, yet was not the leaſt meanes of his comfort, becauſe hauing himſelfe experienced diſtreſſe, he tould, how counſell and reliefe might be ſeaſonably confirmed, and beere, like the diſcrecte Phiſition, knowing the ſtate of his Patients body, reduced him to ſome moderations ſo that their humanity, and *Placandus* good vſage, made *Montanus* beleeue, he was ordayned

Montanus as Placandus ſeruant ſaluted by Coranus.

to

to this quietneſſe: For with a kind of delight he put in practiſe willingnes, and exerciſe the ouermaſterers of difficulties, which vnder propped his knowledge with theſe particulars, how to paſture the Cattle before the Sunnes pride might preuent theyr ſtomackes, how to guide them ere the Euening had determined theyr reſt; when to water, and where to refreſh them; when to driue them to the Fold, when to retyre from the Field, and in what ſort to vſe the inſtruments of commaunde his voyce and Pipe, all which were done with ſo good a grace, that the beholders woondred at the action, and he muſed how neceſsity had ſo ſoone acquainted the action: they loueing, his Maiſter liking; and hee ſatisfied to be thus loued and liked.

BY this time, Fame was not ſo nigardly, but the women as wel as men (to whom in deed curioſity ſeemed more proper) entertained the newes, & had not a cuſtomarie modeſty reſtrained their deſires, they would ſooner haue ſatiated their longing then they did; yet becauſe their Sommer Feaſt approched, in which many meetings, & ancient ceremonies had their ſeuerall paſſages, their forward deſire was a little ſuppreſſed, and the feaſtiuall approched to put them in remembrance, that Time had ſtrengthned their encreaſes, and this Stranger expected the ſetting them ſelues foorth to beſt becomming:

Coranus not onely relateth the ſtory of Montanus, but deſcribeth him to his daughter Deſtona.

In the meane while, *Coranus* returning home, told his Daughter *Deltona* (for the Man was wiueleſſe, and a ſtranger amongſt them) of *Montanus* ariuall with amplification of the circumſtances belonging to his ſhipwracke, which becauſe it agreed to their fortune, ſhee was willing to heare, and hee readie to dilate. Truely (quoth hee) I neuer ſaw a man of a better preſence, his ſtature comely and tall, yet not exceeding mediocritie; his members ſo framed, as if our firſt Mother looking backe on the worke, had like a skilfull ſtatuarie new poliſhed, what ſhee eſcaped; his Shoulders large, and Body vpright; of mighty Bone, and not ouermuch Fleſh; the Necke in equality of length made to ſupport a well proportioned Head; and an amiable, yet ſtately Countenance, which like ſome faire Planet in a froſtie night, by ſpeciall markes doth warrant him of Noble birth: For the Treſſes ſpatiouſly plighted ſeeme to boaſt of extraordinarie curiouſneſſe, and the *Tyara* ſumptuouſly faſhioned, to propoſe vnto vs a very certainty of wealth: his Eyes according to the courſe they intende, louely, compelled to diſtemperature fearefull, & enclining to ſadneſſe, very Adamants of Compaſsion: to be plaine, hee may be what our greateſt thoughts can comprehend; but as he is, we repute him *Placandus* ſeruant by name of *Montanus*.

Coranus deſcribeth Montanus to Deltona.

Deltona could not but like her Fathers deſcription, and allow of his opinion; yet was not ſatiſfied,

fied becauſe ſhee had not ſeene him; and wiſhed to ſee him, that ſhe might be ſatisfied: wondring how her deſire tooke vpon it ſuch a libertie, and halfe aſhamed, leaſt her Father might perceiue her minde diſtempred, but hee poore man, had a world of conceites to thinke of: for though hee looked on her with a kind of demureneſſe, yet was it to ouerlooke her, leaſt ſhee might haue diſcouered his ſighing and teares; which to preuent he cunningly led her foorth into a larger feeld of other conference; and ſo they remained with a reciprocall gladneſſe not to be ſeene perplexed.

Now the Feaſt comming forward, *Placandus* much mooued with the deſert of his new Seruant, and as it were enriched with the care he had ouer his charge, and the proſperitie following his care, thought to gratifie him with a thing of ſome worth, and therefore one Euening by way of relation, hee told the Storie how his Wife, his louing Wife, his louing loued Wife *Iapeta*, miſcarying long ſince in child-birth, left him a fatherleſſe, and a ſorrowfull Widower, which for the time had ſuch impreſsion, that for feare to be ſo againe called to the account of paſsion, he vowed in *Marpeſias* Caue, he would neuer marry; and although I haue found it a matter almoſt of impoſsibilitie „ to tie our frayltie to ſuch ſtrict rules: yet my ho- „ neſt *Montanus*, I haue waded through the difficultie, and I hope reſerued my ſelfe to ſome good

purpose: For laying open the Records of thy desert, I cannot but studie to make satisfaction, and by way of requitall doe adopt thee my Sonne. With that he ran ouer the discourse of their meetings, ancient ceremonies, the deuice of their dances, the solemnitie of their sittings, wrastlings, pastimes, hollidayes, and willed him to remember his now aduancement accordingly.

Placandus adopteth Montanus his sonne,

But when Report had not spared to publish the newes, euery one reioyced to see Vertue ballanced with Equity and Recompence; onely this happened as a most strange allowance of Fortune, that amongst so many humoristes, no enuious eye ouerlooked him, or at least made any outward remonstrance of repining; which appeared in the loue borne before, and the attendance at the time appoynted: For ere the Morning (wherein their long expectation was to be satisfied with the dayes pleasure) had fully let out the Sunne out of his lodging: To *Placandus* as president of the maried, did the chiefest solemly bid God-morrow. *Montanus* as *Placandus* Sonne conducted the Youth: *Lemprana* a Widdow directed the Wiues; *Deltona Coranus* Daughter inuited the Virgins; and thus suffered this assembly a fourefold diuision, making their procession with instruments of Musicke round about the Downes, and altogether singing a pastorall to the honour of the Sunne; which finished, they presented their Offertories at *Marpesias* Caue.

This

This Caue ſtood in a Rocke within a mile of the Sea, and not fiue from the great Towne *Fortona*, the entrance gratified with the ſhadow of two large Pines, the mouth ſomewhat more vpright, reſembled a well proportioned Hemiſphere; the couering was poliſhed by art to counterfeit a rough Marble, the foundation by Nature was paued with faſtned Pibbles, with a dellicate current of Water after the entercourſe of people did cleanſe, and by induſtry as it were plighted with wel coloured Sedges, from which the Seaes moyſture was carefully dryed: the firſt Roome did welcome thee with a ſpatious roundneſſe, not much beautified with furniture or coſtlines, onely diuers Seats were heawne to ſome forme, as if meditation deſired reſt, and not vanitie: Next, a narrow ſtragling Entry gaue thee cauſe of woonder rather then delight; and laſt of all, a ſquare Roome quadrated with diuers Statuas wrought out of the pureſt Allablaſter inuited thee to the ſecrets of the place, and added commendaton to the workemen, who demeaned them ſelues ſo well, as if heretofore they conuerſed with the *Siluan* Nimphes: For they made the Feete vnſhod, and yet not altogeather vncouered; the Armes all naked, but that certaine Garlands like a bendy partition ſhadowed ſome part of the outwarde accident, their Garmentes a looſe kinde of Mantell comming Scarfewiſe vnder the right Arme, and made faſt on the left Shoulder,

The deſcription of Martesias Caue.

the Haire vntyed without curioſitie, but that the hanging downe ſeemed a curiouſneſſe, hung downe with ſufficient comelineſſe, their Loynes were looſely girt with a kind of Belt, which at pleaſure made the neither part of their Mantell reſemble a full blowne double Roſe; their Countenances were amiable, youthfull, rather ſmiling then ſad, and bending to another, reſpected none but them ſelues; the Head was decked with a Corenet of Flowers, as if they meant to tell vs, Vertue compelleth Honour as well as commendation, and the whole portrature ſo well graced, that a man could not but affoord a reuerence. In the midſt of this roome was a ſquare Table ſeruing to many purpoſes, as contracts of Mariages, the parties enterchangably embracing ouerthwart, then kiſsing, then with a ſetled countenaunce laying one hand vpon another, ſwearing an inuiolable League; Bargaines and exchangings diſpatched, both buyer and ſeller promiſing no more, then they meant to performe, and performing no leſſe then they preſumed to promiſe; offerings of their encreaſes preſented, which euer returned with aduantage, according to the willingnes of the partie and the honeſtie of the giuer: ſacrifices for pacification fulfilled, as their conſciences layed open tranſgreſsion, or their deſires meditated Religion, knowing the Gods were to be adored, and their neighbours to be beloued, The *Anchreſs* was extracted from the

the blood of *Prometheus*, whom they ſuperſtitiouſly beleeued a great God, and once had his reſidence on Mount *Caucaſus*, and ſo began a Familie amongſt them: ſhee euer liued vnmaryed, and had ſixe ſeruant Maides likewiſe to attend her her reputation was the greater, becauſe ſhe neuer fed the people with vntruths, nor exacted from them more, then their owne willingnes extended vnto: the inward Roome ſhe kept ſhut, and yet ſtood open, while anyes buſineſſe imported it, becauſe the next commer might haue warning the place was ſupplyed: but why the name of *Marpeſia* receiued eſtimation amongſt them, you muſt bee thus aduiſed.

The Story of Marpeſia.

IN the mightie Kingdome of *Scithia*, at ſuch time, as the firſt *Amaſons*, women of Heroiecall courage, gloried to make themſelues inſtruments of vertue; raigned as Queen the excellent *Laciana*: a woman of great Induſtrie, & greater ſucceſſe in her Induſtry: for much affecting the magnanimity of *Tolmilanda*, againſt the *Tartarian Mulmaſhag*, ſhe fortunatly determined diuers famous exploits, and after gouerned the countreyes with ſuch maieſtie and wiſedome, that other Kingdomes feared her diſpleaſure, with louing her vertue; and her owne ſubiects had the practiſe of ſingular diſcipline, which ſo much the more grew beneficiall, by how much the imployment tended to their good: of her proceeded *Deiophaba*, and from her the

the faire *Poligambis*, vnder whom an enuious anger, that women should so raise the Trophees of *Honor*, excited the adioyning Kingdoms to conspire their destruction, and Fortune neuer constant but in vnconstancies, permitted a wicked Furie to massacre the wonderfulnesse of nature: wherein, though the large circumstance, and the strangenesse of the Action keepeth my tongue from her full discourse; yet this must I discouer, that the course of time disappointed their ambition, and dissolued this imparadised company: onely *Marpesia* sister to *Poligambis*, as it were allotted from the beginning to some deuinesse retyred hither, and erected another Regiment, but of different qualitie: For though shee grewe in fauour so Beautifull, and in Beauty so Celestiall, that the greatest Princes deuoted their endeuours to her acceptation: yet shee proclaimed against vanitie defiance, and *Cupid* stormed to bee so countercheeked: this made her abandon all Courtly fashions, least deceitfull tempration might at aduantage entrappe her weakenesse, and heere repose herselfe in a solitarie Groue, that a quiet dispensation from the company of men, might settle obedience to vndefiled thoughts. But some Writers haue iustified, how the desire of reuenge so exasperated her anger, that ere three yeeres had resetled the Company, and drawne backe againe her dispersed Forces, shee returned with a newe Alarum, and prosecuted her attempts with sufficient successe;

leauing

leauing the example of her glory to animate *Lampedo* to maintaine this second induſtrie, ſhee proſpering induced *Antiopa*, from her proceeded *Penthiſilia* the mother of the gallant *Thaleſtris*, and the laſt *Marpeſia*: with whoſe renowne other Kings offended, Enuie neuer deſiſted, vntill they ſhrunke indeed vnder deſtruction. Howſoeuer, the reziance of the former *Marpeſia* gaue name to this place, and occaſioned theſe Ceremonies; ſo that after a ciuill conſideration had acquainted the people with husbandry and tillage: in the felling and ſtocking vp the wood was this Caue found, for the wonderfulneſſe religiouſly preſerued, and the conueniencie in manner aforeſaid regarded: and now beginneth our Feſtiuall.

The Shepheards feaſt, wherein Montanus and Deltona meet.

AFter they had ſacrificed at the Caue, the Cuſtome allowed *Montanus* with his Batchellers to deuide themſelues amongſt the Virgines, as Fancy led opinion the way to iudgement: but who had ſeen the louely *Deltona* comming forward, muſt needs haue remembred, that *Diana* with her Nymphes added ſomething to Natures allowance, when ſhe was to entertaine ſo great a Lady; and *Iupiter* determined the Rape of *Caliſto*: for whether the behauiour of this Stranger taught expectation the practiſe of other things, or whether time had ripened their eſtates, that they began to take benefit of their wealth; or whether their own conceits meant to make much

of the blesings of Nature, as not willing to continue in a barren rudeneſſe; or whether the acquaintance with ciuell Cities induced them to immitation, I diſpute not, but the fortune of this day was ſuch, that euery one in a manner ſequeſtred from the common baſeneſſe of *Tartary*, detayned the lookers on with the ſeuerall preſentation of beautie and comelineſſe.

The deſcription of the ſhepherds daughters.

Next to *Deltona* came *Crolaca* old *Silenus* Daughter, who manifeſted ſhe was begotten in a time of diſcretion by attyring her Head after the plaineſt faſhion; and becauſe no deuiſe obſcured any imperfection, ſhe might the better haue ſatisfied a iudicious Cenſurer, had not the neere approach of a prying looke marked the equalitie of her forehead tending to a little flatneſſe.

The ſecond was *Enſeria* very ill placed ſo neere the formoſt; her attire ſeemed rather fantaſticall then coſtly, and added this to ſuſpition, that ſhee determined ſome ſtrange courſe of life, becauſe her beautie was adulterate.

The third was *Hiale*, pleaſant *Baraſtoes* daughter, who might well haue brought liking with admiration on her ſide; but that a little ſmiling ſomewhat more then cheerefulneſſe (as if mirth determined not to goe out of a generation) cal'd her modeſtie in queſtion, and ouer-wrought the ornament of her face, the mouth.

The foorth was *Niphe*, from whom ſome quarter of a yeere before, Deaths Harrold ſummoned both

both Father and Mother; who amaſed the beholders with the appearance of liuely colours naturaly embeliſhing her cheekes, onely a dead eye accuſed her of ſullenneſſe: yet it might be former remembrance admitted the vnkinde ghueſt ſorrow, and limited commendation from ouer-reaching too farre.

Now marched *Ladra* Daughter to *Argias*, (to whom for his excellencie in Muſick, they had giuen a Penſion) and was quickly ſeene: For hauing her Haire large, long, and of a ſingular amber; ſhe ware it in a kinde of looſneſſe; but ſo kindly, that it ſeemed an excellent careleſneſſe: becauſe ſhee was faire and vpright; yet kept pale Lippes, the full life of beautie aſide.

Then preſented her ſelfe *Cariſta* luſty *Darpanos* Daughter, who of purpoſe to ſhew varietie, or vnwilling to patrizare being a Maide merited a choyce commendation, had not a kind of ſobrietie made her ſtrangeneſſe reputed a litteli pride, whereby a liueſineſſe wanted to ſet foorth her worth to the beſt becomming.

The ſeuenth was *Gralle Temellus* onely Child, in whom the beſt cunning might be deceiued, becauſe, though now a fauourable countenance ſeemed dimmed with ouermuch Blood, yet imputing it to a kind of bluſhing, or allowing time the effect of moderation, without doubt ſhe was an amiable preſident of delight: ſo that *Enuy* added not this as an other fault, her ſpeech was ouer loude.

The eight was *Renata*, whose cost questionlesse exceeded her fortune; in regard, that beside a well proportioned Body, the face could boast of no great Beautie, and wanted many parts to make it fauourable.

Now approched *Tarina* ritch *Pleios* Daughter, who made demonstration of her Fathers Wealth, by her owne statelinesse, yet in so good an order, that it seemed a prerogatiue, and had not a seuere Censor exprobated Nature for not allowing so sweete an aspect a perfect clearenesse; to all others it either appeared no defect, or appearing durst not so be counted, considering her owne countenance better marked, dispelled the former conceit, and made a new impression applaud all deserued worthinesse.

Next her came *Carix* blacke *Alcafous* Daughter, whose Haire enclining to a more then brownesse, added that bie name: yet was she full of fauour, which seemed attractiue as ioyned to a sober demeanor; so thou couldest not choose, but repine at Nature for vniting two contraries togeather, because the choysest louer was astonished, when that nakednesse (which modesty allowed to be seene) surpassed the rest for dellicacie and coloure.

The 11. was called the strange *Daplana*, who hauing no good part exactly lookt vpon, possessed yet euery part without exception; because her sweete cariage and dellicate behauiour strocke an

amaze-

amazement, ere you could examine the particulars.

The laſt of eſpeciall note, was *Sabetha*, and in outward ſhew the leaſt; but ſuch a leaſt, as ſhined like a ſparcke of Pleaſure: for the Eyes were able to enflame, the Countenance to enamoure, and her ſelfe ſo well faſhioned to rauiſh: ſo that if a man would haue wiſhed to be the beholder of a dellicate creature, the outward ſhew warranted, and the inward perfection confirmed her the ſame.

But to returne to *Deltona*, like a braue pointed Diamonde triumphing ouer a border of prety ones, not altogether ſo well foiled, ſhee warranted her Liuery to be ſued out of the Court of Perfection, and with all vnited a magnificent portlineſſe; that *Montanus* imagined ſtrange things, and ſuſpected himſelfe ſurprized with the imagination, as though he durſt haue ſworne, ſhee deſerued farre better then a ſimple Cottage: yet allowing as a Stranger the iudgement of ſo many, that tooke her for *Coranus* daughter, he quieted his thoughts, becauſe the buſineſſe in hand diſappointed Meditation, had not the buſineſſe diſquieted him with Meditation. For hee was to ſalute, entertaiue, welcome them, and to place them at the Table, which according to their olde Cuſtomes (leaſt error might breed repining in wronging one another) hee orderly performed: but taking *Deltona* by the hand, as if Loue and Fortune had vſed

ſome conference about it, he made her his owne obiect.

By this time it was a world to ſee, how a little ſtrangeneſſe can alter the whole companie: For the vpper Table conſiſting of the better, and elder ſort wee ried *Placandus* with many queſtions, and in a manner ſeemed emulous againſt the other for hauing *Montanus* amongſt them: They againe reioyced in his preſence, and were ſoone induced to allow him ſome preeminence, and truely howſoeuer he liked their faſhions, or faſhioned himſelfe to their liking, or was now ſetled in the aduantage of his owne amiable and portly countenaunce, hee ſeemed, as if a good Husbande had preſerued a ſtately Cedar in a conuenient Groue of ſmaller Trees, whereby hee might boaſt of one ſurpaſsing all the reſt: but doe not ſuppoſe hee was ſo generally regarded of them, as particularly noted by *Deltona*, who could not ſo moderate her neereneſſe, but ſhee muſt eye him at the full, and when it ſeemed a pleaſing thing to behold, ſhe tooke the occaſion of beholding him to be pleaſed: then ſhe attempted to refraine, little knowing the reſtraint, made her next looking paſsionate: yet excuſed by the curteſie to Strangers, ſhe againe emboldned her ſelfe to looke, and to ſpeake, both performed with ſuch Loue-infuſing ſweetneſſe, that *Montanus* proteſted maieſtie was betrayed to the meaneſt deiection. For how could ſo great beautie ſeeme kinde, but hee

must

muſt be friendly? How could ſhee demaund, but he muſt anſwere? How could ſhe view him, but he muſt review her? How could ſhee craue, but he muſt allow it? How could ſhee execute any thing, but he muſt be pleaſed? Inſomuch that this firſt acquaintance warranted delight in the higheſt manner, and ſoothed their deſires to wiſh the continuance; yet thoſe wiſhes were not ready to admit any ſtedfaſtneſſe, becauſe *Montanus* was to forward the Dances, which for the firſt day concluded the paſtimes, wherein no ſooner ſetled he himſelfe to the meaſure with *Deltona*, but as if a ſoft *Eſterly* winde had with a ſudden ſtrength ſturred the thicke leaued trees, a certaine wiſpering of the company from mutuall eying them proceeded to liking; from liking to affecting; from affecting to prayſing; from prayſing to wiſhing them ſome good; and debating wherein, confirmed it by marriage: the rather becauſe they had demeaned themſelues ſo well before, and ſeemed now ſutable in a Liuerie of preeminence: but other Coples preſented occaſion of new ſpeach: yet *Montanus* ſtil in ſight was ſtil remembred, as buſied in ordring the next commers out to the Dances.

HEere then was deciphered ſober *Eugenio*, who by the outward countance aſſured, his care was greater to encreaſe his wealth, then his pleaſure. *The diſcription of the ſhepheards.*

Louely *Miletus* a man ſtill practiſing of good as one, which knew no bad.

Rich

Rich *Polio*, whoſe abilitie outcountenanced imperfections, which without doubt would elſe in pouertie not without ſcandall haue appeared, beſides hee publiſhed this errour, that counting Vertue but the paſſage of breath, hee eſteemed Money before a Friend.

Rude *Sciſcus*, who in an ill accompliſhed pride, ſhewed rather a willingneſſe to the vice, then was faſhioned to any Grace or good Manner.

Vnfortunate *Pleiſtos*, whoſe Fancie was euer haunted with a counter-changeable croſſeneſſe, as a man playing with his Shadow running from that, which followed him, and proſecuting, what ſeemed to fly from him.

Quiet *Dromos*, who yet was abuſed for his opiuion of conſience, and a ſlackneſſe to reueng euery diſgrace, gaue ſuſpition of cowardice.

Peuiſh *Derſon*, who carleſſe either of Order, or good Manner belonging to education, manifeſted a very ſcorne of behauiour, and harſh extremitie of humours.

Modeſt *Ergaſtus*, as one ſpeaking little, but meditating the more, loth to giue occaſion of offence, and vnwilling to remaine ſullen.

Froward *Romero*, who indeed hauing a naturall gift of vtterance was not tongne-tyed, as ſuppoſing his ſpeech to be ſtill pleaſing.

Stubborne *Buſtoſa* who had no good qualitie, but plaineneſſe.

Pleaſant *Tedanus*, who graced with many qualities,

lities was as gracious to seuerall Companies.

Sturdie *Philastro*, who thought well of himselfe, because he was able to match his hardest ilwiller.

Besides that did not dance, *Enuious Franio*, who was not onely ill in himselfe, but compassed to make all others like himselfe.

The continuance of the Feast, with the Exercises of the shepheards.

THVS prooued their Actions to bee the seruants of time, and with making their Procession once againe about the Pastures, that dayes iollitie was ended, so they thought it conuenient to depart, which without further curiositie they would haue done, had not *Montanus* by taking leaue of *Deltona*, giuen notice to the rest, that some Ceremonie of good obseruation, addeth a grace to each Action. But depart they must, and depart they did, which being no longer then the next Morning: The next Morning they thought it ouer-long, vntill the swiftnesse of their footeman-shippe gaue the Reward to the best deseruer.

The secodn meeting of Montanus and Deltona

BVt when *Montanus* saw *Deltona* holde the Garland, at the vpper end of the Lists, which he quickly did, because the place and her selfe were of specialtie; or els Loue (if hee durst haue so perswaded himselfe) is quicke sighted, he stood amazed, almost neglecting what hee had in hand: yet lest the company might ouer-looke his distemperature; or that his owne disposition still desired, what

was excellent; or ielious, that any other ſhould watch *Deltona* with the like regards or emulous to hazzard his credit by being ouer-maſtered, hee gallantly ſet forwatd; and was indeede ſo forward, that while the reſt repined at Fortune to ſuffer a Stranger to glory in their diſgrace, he had time to tell her, that her matchleſſe beauty was attractiue, and had added wings to his willingneſſe: with that ſhee gaue him the Garland to weare, and forgaue him a kiſſe which hee ſtole: Now? Whether kiſſes produce ſtrange Effects? Or ſome naturall ſecret was infuſed with the new breath? he remained diſtracted, and ſeemed more pleaſed with the theft, then the ſonne of *Maia*, when he had beguiled the euer-waking eyes of *Argus*: but the Company. comming forward deuided his deſire, and ouer-wrought his countenance by beſtowing liberall prayſes on his deſert.

Thus did a ſecond meeting encreaſe more vertue, and liking. For many qualities in one man, helpe forward to excellencie; and diuers interviewes in well-willing parties, conclude affection: which (to bee plaine) prooued heere in ſhort time a ſtrange deuiſe of Fortune, but wee are not yet ready for ſuch contentment, becauſe the third dayes Exerciſe, which was Wraſtling (*Placandus*, *Silenus*, and *Argias* Iudges) preſented it ſelfe with an excellent temprature. Imagine yet *Montanus* was not ſo haſty, but he looked vp to the Mount to ſee *Deltona*, who ſoone apprehended the motion,

tion, and looked too; by which he ſuppoſed ſhee bade him to remember himſelfe, as if the ſecret of his deſaſter had been diſcouered: In this feruencie he ſtepped foorth vncalled, neuer ſeeming angry till now; nor to be feared, till hee was angry, and then were all commers ouer-throwne: what he yet did, proceeded rather from a neceſſary vertue, then a vaine oſtentation, vnleſſe it were in the contention with *Franio*, whom for ill lookes and baſe manner of Play, valour ſcorned, ſo that adding a little violence to diſdaine, the fall brake his arme; no man ſo ſorry for his hurt, as glad of *Montanus* eſtimation, which by a generall Plaudite, and the yeelding vp the Prizes, gaue him teſtimonie of regard.

The third meeting of Montanus and Deltona.

NOw the Cuſtome ſhadowed the ſecrets of paſsion, if perhaps there happened a mutuall liking of Parties: For it was an honour to the preuailer, if he beſtowed the Prize (which was a Watchet Scarffe of curl'd Cypers, embrodered ouer with Starres of gold) on any worthy ſubiect: Whereupon *Montanus* with a wanton pleaſantneſſe, much gracing his demeanour, preſented the ſame to *Deltona*; who tooke it, but in ſuch a manner, that ſhee knewe not, whether the gift, or the handſomneſſe in the deliuerie pleaſed more, beſides: her ſudden bluſhing matched to contraries together, feare & gladneſſe. But heere ended their Paſtimes, which ac-

cording to the true nature of pleaſure, leaſt a continuall ſatiating ſhould rather glut then delight, did they vſe with ſparingneſſe: ſo that euery one applyed their ſeuerall affaires, no man imagining any ill, and therefore not practiſing; no man practiſing, becauſe they were enemies to diſhoneſtie, no man diſhoneſt, for friendſhip helpeth vp and downe the burdens of the weake, and leaueth no fault vnexcuſed. Elſe you muſt thinke, heere were ſuch, as did loue, could hurt, might mallice, durſt controll, and knew to reuenge; all which were afterward put in execution, when folly and impietie entred the breach againſt goodneſſe. But the time importuned their care ouer their eſtates, which conſiſting in the proſperity of their cattle compelled a generall retyring to their Heards & Flocks.

Montanus in loue with Deltona.

NOw; what was this retyring, but a very tyring of *Montanus*, in whoſe conceit Fancy already had made Impreſsion? For though the outward ſhew diſcouered no diſtemperature, yet the wit much out of frame, ſtriued to reſtraine it ſelf from any baſe ſcope: and whether other company put him in minde of the abſence of *Deltona*? Or that the nature of abſence bred a greater deſire to poſſeſſe the thing vnobtained, he ſuddenly began to be angry with himſelfe for ſuffering her departure, and encreaſed his anger with deſpaire of her returne; but giuing that ſtoppe a daſh with an heroicall preſumption, that nothing

nothing was impoſſible, it ſomewhat ſetled him in the hope of a new meeting: at laſt he began a ſtrict examination, why his minde ſhould ſo run on *Deltona*; his ſleepes in broken dreames of *Deltona*; his dreames, that hee meeteth *Deltona*? his waking fancie recounting the worth of *Deltona*; ſtedfaſtly ſuppoſing a ſhepheards daughter could not be *Deltona*? But the more hee meditated, the ſooner he receiued a foile, for lacke of reſolution, ſo that by this time the want of the thing longed for was not ſo great, as the meanes to obtaine it daungerous: his feare, miſtruſting the practiſes hee meant to ſet on worke, and his deſire importuning ſome ſatisfaction: this willed him to repayre to ſolitarineſſe, where hee quickly ranne ouer the rugged Fieldes of diſquiet; ſometime condemning fondneſſe and folly for conſorting together, then exclaming on his owne weakeneſſe, for yeelding to ſuch degenerate companions: other-while hee met with conſideration, that man was ſubiect to many inconueniences; anon he encountered with patience, a ſtrange vertue to pull on heauier burdens; ſometime hee vpbrayded his peuiſhneſſe for his ſubmiſsion, after the Battle with *Leonidas*; and by & by, he proteſted to abiure both the place and the companie: But this ſeeming a counterfeit ſtoutneſſe (as if hee had offended by ſuch imagination) ſet him foorth to the recourſe of his Friendes; but alas, their Welcome prooued like a trayterous Banquet,

wherein miſchiefe counterfeiteth to betray a man, and ſounded in his eares, they were the enemies of Repoſednesſe; whereupon hee practiſed againe to be alone, had not ſo many by wayes of Fancie confounded him, that hee durſt not abide the fearefulneſſe of being alone. Thus euery thing framed the vnframing of his health, and brought him at laſt to the vnkind acquaintance of a Feuer, whereby he wanted orderly reſt, and naturall diet, the ſoule bearing the body company in tollerating many changeable inflictings, as it had yeelded to a ſence-weakning violence; ſometime leaning the head againſt a firmeneſſe, as if he meant to ſettle his Braine: otherwile the Armes croſſed » with ſtrength, reſembled two ſtrong Barres, » which bound in the Heart from flying out of her incloſure: Sometimes his Feete ſtood him in ſtead to pace out his griefe: anone a Pallet ſeemed proude of the eaſe it affoorded: preſently the Ground was his reſting place, and at laſt by his vnreſt, hee could abide in no place; which when the good old *Placandus* had diſcouered, the care and opinion, which he conceiued of his new adopted Sonne, made him pitty his diſtreſſe, and put in execution his pitty.

» My Sonne (qnoth hee) doubt not to vnlocke » the treaſure of thy thoughts to mee: For as I » haue reſpected thy deſert, and loued thee with the » ſame reſpect; ſo hath my loue ouerwatched thy » griefe, and that loue made me partaker of the ſor-

row:

row: Bee therefore perfect in thy former Wiſe-
dome, and thinke there is a remedie to each deſa-
ſter; by my Zeale, and thy owne Vertue I there-
fore coniure thee, let mee know the occaſion,
whereby thou haſt admitted this diſcontentment,
and welcommed ſo vnkind gueſtes as Griefe, and
Diſquiet. Looke how a man hearing the ſound
of ſome ſweete harmonie, and vnwilling to deceiue
his ſence of the pleaſure, biddeth a ſilence; ſo
ſtood our paſsionate *Montanus*, while *Placandus*
had thus broken the encloſure of his ſullenneſſe:
and finding Silence a tyrant maintaining this facti-
on of diſtemperature againſt him, he thus replied,
O Father, this childiſhneſſe, folly, and negli-
gence, is worthy reprehenſion! yet pardon my
vnwillingneſſe either to be childiſh, fooliſh, or
negligent? And this I doe proteſt, vnleſſe ſome
ſecret influence had ouer-wrought my ſpirits, no
peeuiſh Humour could haue thus maſtred mee.
For to be plaine; I like *Deltona*, I loue *Deltona*;
yea and liue in the loue and liking of *Deltona*:
But ſuppoſe not? this breuitie marcheth with the
ſame ſlightneſſe: For a world of ſecrets depend
on my ſpeaches, yet my tongue hath now mitti-
gated the burdenſome paine of my heart, which
otherwiſe like a well ſtopped Ouen, had increaſed
the burning heate for lacke of vent.

When *Placandus* heard the name of *Deltona*
pronounced, you might haue compared him to
a man meeting an Adder in an vnbeaten path,
and

and ſtarteth for feare, as if indeed the worme had miſchieued him, ſo gaue hee a ſudden motion prognoſticating further miſhap: Oh (ſaith hee) what doth *Montanus* attempt? I thinke ſhe hath vowed her ſelfe to ſcorne, and proclaimed defiance againſt Fancie: Elſe would ſhe neuer haue checked Fortune in her full flight of happineſſe toward her? For *Rugeo* Duke of *Fortona* tempted her conſtancie, and attempted to perſwade a more glorious alteration: but ſhe to all our amazements denied the honour, and ouer-priſed this quietnes beyond Courtly vanitie: yet (*my Sonne*) becauſe Loue and deuine appointment hath ſome ſecret in ſtore, I wiſh thee not deſpaire; but vſe my credit, and thine owne deſert to hold the beame, wherein Loue weigheth the fancies of women: onely as a Caueat, beware of *Franio*; for beſides the generall ill conditions wherewith he is infected; I heare he whiſpereth, yea murmureth againſt thee, which proceeding from malice hath this propertie, neuer to deſiſt, till with aduantage it prooue inficious. Farre bee it from my obedience anſwered *Montanus*, not to make vſe of your aduice and encouragement, I will therefore by the great eye of heauen, goe to morrow to *Coranus* howſe, a day wherin as the world agreed to yeeld me life, ſo may *Cupid* aſſent to afford mee ioy to my life; but while he prepareth for his iourney, let vs ſee how *Deltona* is willing to admit him.

After

Deltona in loue with Montanus, and how they came together.

AFter the Feastiuals had end, *Coranus* with his Daughter returned home, who poore soule very quickly began another manner of Banquet: For somewhat too curious in the musing at her owne weaknesse, to be ouersswayed with conceit, shee liued extreame pensiue; now whether continuall pensiuenesse debarring life openeth vnto griefe, griefe vnto distemperature, and distemperature vnto sicknesse, I know not; but shee seemed suddainely surprised; and neither waked with quietnesse, nor slept in soundnesse, shee would looke sad, sigh often, practise extrauagant actions, and yet say little; which questionlesse kept the more in store against shee discouered her passion: But her Father was mightily perplexed, because his care extended to the highest degree of regard; and her sorrow continued with the sorest manner of trouble: therefore finding the body distempered from the minde, hee serled to ouerwatch her, if at any time he might discouer the cause. For though Phisicke can cure diseased bodies, when the Infirmitie is knowne, yet hath it small power ouer troubled Passions aryfing from hidden Distemperature: At last (some excuse of businesse emboldning her to presume on his absence) his patience ouer-matched ignorauncе, and one morning acquainted this abrupinesse.

Surely (quoth shee) I cannot beleeue my selfe the seruant of Vertue, when I finde the best part of

" my ſelfe ſubiect to baſeneſſe, and the reſt caryed
" with as ill violence? An Gods; a Shepheard; a
" Stragler; an out-caſt thus to entrappe me, and re-
" uerſe my deuotion? what worſe temptation? where
" is the goodneſſe my reſolution boaſted of, euer
" countermanding incontinent thoughts? what
" quite exiled? where is the magnanimitie which
" gaine-ſayed the Duke in his greatneſſe, and kept
" chaſtitie vpright in a ſimple Cottage? what?
" worne with time, or out of countenance with al-
" lurement? why then I ſee continencie hath ſecret
" enemies, and conſtancie hidden foes, who like
" traitours in an vnbuilt caſte an ouerthrow by ad-
" uantage? But oh deuine Loue, this foolish pre-
" ſumption of ours is but a mockerie to withſtand
" thy violences and the glory wee ſeeke in ſtriuing
" againſt nature, an vnkinde detention from happi-
" neſſe: as though wee were taxed and indeed deſi-
" red to finiſh ſome excellent worke, and yet kept
" backe our ſelues in beginning the ſame. I therefore
" recant and recall my deuotion; yet deare vertue
" turne not thy face from me, for before any occaſi-
" on open the way of incontinencie, I will ſeale my
" couenants to thee with my deareſt blood: and
" bleſſed *Genius*, what doe I know, but thou haſt
" ouerlooked my patience, and brought *Montanus*
" to patterne out the perfection of men for to ſpeak
" with a liberall trueth, whatere hee is, vertue and
" honour hath queſtionleſſe taught him the way to
" full gracing goodneſſe. Here thoſe excellent lights

of

of her bodie were dimmed with moisture, and passion had so racked her spirit, that though the smart caused her to confesse any thing, yet the extremitie of paine, ouer-wrought the instrument of vtterance, and with a sweet stilnesse enforced silence, which her father was mooued to pitie, and could not choose but accompany her with his teares, being once minded to haue discouered himselfe, but fearing to our-countenance her by being intercepted, hee suffered the humour to haue a little scope, and so retired somewhat pleased; hee now knew the cause of her griefe.

Montanus commeth to Coranus and Deltona.

AS these feares and sorrowes had their seuerall passages betweene *Coranus* and his Daughter, one morning (yet not so early to except against good manners) the opening of the outward Dore gaue them warning of some Strangers accesse, and the old man hastning to vnlocke, the other found *Montanus* in the Court with a ready message from *Placandus* to speake with him. Truely (sayd he) welcome, and if the word welcome might last so long, as my desire to bid you welcome, I should doe nothing but repeate welcome. In this extrauagant manner, as if *Montanus* presence had strucke both a reuerence and delight, or his daughters griefe entreated redresse, hee vsherd him through two roomes into a lowe chamber, and bad him tary till he prepared his entertainement. But when *Montanus* beheld *Deltona*

sadly couched on the Russhie shore, they strewing the ground, and shee bestrewing them with her Teares, which (as water cast on a white Wall leaueth a show of spotted impression, seemed shadowes of pale Pearles) in a kind of generall pitty hee condemned Distemperature for maintayning a quarrell against such rarenes: then finding it touched him neerer, as liking the party, the eyes of affection bade him looke for reliefe; had he either knowne what to doe, or durst haue done what hee knew: at last checking his foolish feare, seeing Loue had in deed chayned his heart to her deuotion, by many made paces, as if *Orpheus* were againe to passe by the euer-waking *Cerberus*; hee approached vnto her: To whom when he came, and that a little disdaine had scorned to be entrapped, whereby a womanly remembrance hastned to lap her cloaths togeather, which for her ease she had vnlaced: the strangenesse of the accident ouercame her former desire, and a pretty shame to be watched, made her affrayde of what she wished; and her feare onely put in practise a confused flight, which *Montanus* durst not yeeld vnto, and therefore with a reuerent speedinesse caught hold of her arme, almost bare by hasty massacring the artificiall garment, whereby his eyes seeled now their quickenesse, and new thoughts immagined a very fire to burne his presuming hand. As for what was treasured vnseen, he imputed that to the cunning of the Ieweler who first laying abroad to the contentment of the

beholders

beholders his ſmaller priſed Riches, doth only declare, hee hath a Iem of that ineſtimable vallew, as may well ſuffice to be a preſent for the greateſt Monarch: with the like diſpoſition was *Montanus* tranſported, and therefore loth to looſe the benefit of what his hope aſſured was pretious, hee entreated her aboad; and perceiuing her ſomewhat more tractable, thus diſputed the matter.

Moſt worthy of the greateſt worth; neither are teares the Antidotes of griefe, nor griefe a preuention of trouble: yet do we complaine to ſee Mortality the tennisball of Fortune, now ſtroke low, then mounted high; anone beaten backe againe, and at laſt banded quite away, little remembring that Vertue remaineth immaculate, and bringeth Patience to ouermaſter Aduerſitie, which in very meane ſpirits vpholdeth weakneſſe and fraylty, by conſidering diuine prouidence hath ordained, what neither induſtry can preuent, nor mans cunning auoyde: but in greater courages, when ſoeuer croſſes chaunce, there muſt be a repreſenting of the Sunne which at the loweſt ſeemeth biggeſt; and indeed affliction retyreth, when ſhee is with conſtancie tollerated: Deny not therefore Vertue her due in ſubiecting it to ſo base an enemie as Deſpaire; nor Beautie preeminence in thus diſordering thy moſt faire amongſt the faireſt faireneſſe: But leaue this ſadneſſe, & by the immortall powes I ſweare (which with an Emphaſis he pronounced) no diſcontentment ſhall affright thee:

" for my ſelfe wil vndertake the office of a neighbor
" to comfort, of a friend to aſsiſt, or of: which hee
" would faine in a more kinder terme haue vttered,
" but not knowing what it was, hee left her to ima-
" gine, what it might be.

Heere a mannerly ſtoppe, and a prety faſhion of amazement cauſed his ſtrength compaſsing her tender writt to ſuffer ſome changes, and withall a ſad kinde of looke waranted his wordes to proceed from true deſire: but when ſhee marked the orderlineſſe of his behauiour, and that a different grace warranted a greater deſert, then his preſent fortune: a bleſſed hope ſent to her countenance the Meſſenger of delight, and drected vp a well proportioned body to her better becomming: yet had a powerfull reaſon in the time of this parlie ſo tempered her ioy, that ſhee meant not ouer ſodenly to conſent to her owne minde, nor yeelde him too hafty libertie of preſumption: like a diſcreet Maſter, who though his ſeruant bee paine-
" full wil not ouer-familiarly thanke, but with good
" order embolden him to goe forward in his dutie:
" therefore as if ſhee could haue entertained an an-
" gry miſlike, ſhe thus replyed.

Why, who is *Montanus*? that thus enueigheth
" againſt Fortune, as if honour had read a Leſſon
" of magnanimitie vnto him? or from whence pro-
" ceedeth this audacity to poiſon my vertues ſpring
" with the dregs of peeuiſh Loue? Or what male-
" uolent Planet was euer this day predominant,

that

that I must be thus intercepted? Beleeue me, I am afraid I haue played the truant in the Schoole of Modestie, and forgetting my rules by ouer courtesie allowed this stranger some hardinesse: Assure thee therfore, that in the very mislike of this boldnesse, all other good parts are eclipsed in thee, and howsoeuer I could be perswaded to suppose any goodnesse in mariage, *Placandus* sonne must take another course: for my wits were neuer so enchanted to repulse the offer of a mighty Duke, and submit to a shepherds flattery: but to be plaine, I haue deuoted my selfe to another Saint, and offred my incense on the pure altar of Continency.

When hee had heard her out, as if a sudden feare fatally prognosticated some following mischiefe, or sullen anger kept the motion of the tongue from true liuelinesse: hee stood amazed, scarse able to yeeld a reason why he was amazed: like a man meditating in secret stilnesse, who looketh, yet perceiueth not on what, by reason the minde transporteth the vse of sence to other purpose: But knowing custome taught all women the deniall of what they wished, as though hee would haue chid her for such generall peruisnesse he once againe replyed. By the giuer of my life, this peremptorinesse shall not accord with successe, nor will I hazard the losse of what I esteeme so precious: Remember therefore the wrong thou shalt doe to nature in obscuring her blessings from the delight of men; remember the displeasure to the world,

" world, in depriuing it of the fruites of Mariage:
" Remember the iniurie to mee, who can ballance
" thee beyond expectation, and boaſt his regarde
" meriteth a better recompence, then deſpight.
With this the countenance began to readmit a priſtinate excellencie, and *Deltona* ſuppoſed ſhee ſaw a new *Montanus*; which queſtionleſſe much imboldned her, and bade hope entertaine an other Ioy: Now when Ioy came to play her part, no deuice ſerued to counterfeite Diſdaine: onely Wiſedome limitted her Paſsion within ſure bounds, and ſhe ſomewhat relenting, thus anſwe-
" red. Wel, if the meditation of this buſines perſwad
" mee to a ſweete miſchiefe, I will not altogeather
" reiect your remembrance; and if my *Genius* ha-
" uing hitherto protected my Fayth and Chaſtity,
" thinke it now time to ſupplant it with a neceſſary
" ill, I am content to lay open the records of your
" merit and loyaltie: Yet preſume not in this as an
" anſwer, nor allow Hope any libertie to ſuppoſe,
" that I ſhall euer be perſwaded to loue. But hee
" hearing her name Loue; with a portly demeanour ſtepped forward, and cauſed a mannerly neerneſſe to make impreſsion on her lippes, ſaying withall. My deareſt life; by thy Beautie I ſweare, it ſhall returne from whence it came, and thus will I keepe in this loue-breathing ſweetneſſe, that it may diue backe againe to the heart, and worke there conuenient motiones of delight: now whether the ſudden audacitie countermaunded pre-
uention;

uention; (or the grace vnited purchaſed attonement, I will not diſpute, but ſhe neither ſeemed ſo angry, nor ſo ſad, onely ſhe told him, her cuſtomes admitted not ſo much as a circumſtance of wanconneſſe.

Corauus is pleaſed with Deltonas recouery, and Montanus company.

BY this time the aged *Coranus* prepared his viandes, and comming vnto them found as it were a newe cheerefulneſſe in his daughter, which loth to diſturbe he framed all his ſpeach to *Montanus*, ſaying; that it troubled him not a litle in the wanting ſufficiencie to entertaine him. Leaue off ſuch ceremonie (replyed he) I am more troubled to finde *Deltona* penſiue and diſtempred, but time and her owne conſtancie will frame her thoughts to better purpoſe. I doe purpoſe ſo indeed (quoth ſhe) but to the greateſt purpoſe: how ſhall I requite the courteſie of the good *Placandus*, that wiſheth ſo well to an vndeſeruing creature? By the encreaſe of our Flockes I ſweare (quoth *Montanus*) he ſhould be a contrary to all men I haue conuerſed with, who did not more then wiſh wel to ſuch all pleaſing goodnes: ſay you ſo: anſwered *Coranus*, then would my dwelling, my ſelfe, or my daughter had any meanes to inuite you to contentment? promiſe for your ſelfe good Father (replyed *Deltona*) For company worketh temptation, and Youngmens flatteries are the baites of our modeſtie, which they ſuppoſe with a few idle praiſes

to supplant. Nay (quoth *Montanus*) for my part I will not abuse what is of worth with flatterie, but thinke, that prayses proceede from necessitie. Then belike (sayde *Deltona*) you make praysing a necessary helpe to flatterie, that was cunningly concluded. But I hope (answered hee) you will not so hemme in my speeches with vnkind exception. No, no, (replied *Coranus*) be sure my daughter meanes well, whatsoeuer shee saith: and quoth *Deltona*, *Montanus* speakes well whatsoeuer he meaneth: and *Deltona* lookes well (answered *Montanus*) to be spoken vnto. But words said she, be like the passage of a shippe, leauing no shew behinde of her course, and promises resemble fading shadowes. Then try performance (replied *Montanus*) vertue appeareth in her liuelieſt colours in action. Nay, yet obiected *Deltona*, better liue with want of something may be wished for, then in certaintie of euery thing breedeth trouble. Why (quoth *Montanus*) is there such trouble in Marriage? I assure you not (said *Coranus*) for if the parties loue vpon a sure ground, they resemble a building strongly founded, and one part depending on another equally deuideth the comfort: againe, when inconueniencies arise, least the burden proue too grieuous, a yoke-fellow helpeth, so betweene them it is made lightsome, besides the tirannie of want is surprised with content, and mutuall agreement ouercommeth necessitie. But letting this passe (beleeue me) *Montanus* we are very

very glad of your companie, and since your aduenture, me thinkes there appeareth (I know not) what alteration. But I know (said *Deltona*) to look smooth, to dispute cunningly, to seeme ceremonious, to bring presents, to vse protestations, and commit errors: and if all this tende to good purpose, I see no cause of mislike, nor I of liking answered *Deltona*, but to despise all these and make account of simple trueth. Well, quoth *Corauus*, let vs set our teeth on worke, as we haue done our tongues, and for conclusion *Deltona* and I will visite *Placandus* to morrow.

Thus passed away the time, and this meeting with the time, yet could not *Montanus* (after thankes for his entertainement) but take a kinde leaue of *Deltona*, leauing her indeed musing at the departing with these tearmes: My life and Loue once for all liue to be happy, and suppose, there is more in *Montanus* loue then thou canst imagine; so farewell, and let them feare ill, that wish not *Deltona* to farewell. But least he should ouerprise this iollitie, misfortune presented him to an ominous chance, the meeting with *Franio*: the same *Franio*, whose willingnesse to mischiefe exceeded his power, yet had his power compassed some hatefull stratagems: The same *Franio*, whose arme was broken in wrestling with *Montanus*, and whose heart receiued infection from the firruppe of malice: The same *Franio* who therefore pryed into *Montanus* actions, not with a desire of imi-

Montanus meeteth with Franio, comming from Corauus.

cation, nor with a slender wickednesse, only to find fault at imperfection, but with an implacable hatred to supplant him, as the least occasion hapned: euery way playing the Monster of Nature; neither daring to execute his owne reuenge, nor willing that he should perceiue him reuengefull: For still his countenance was as full of flatterie, as the heart of Deceit: This appeared in his ceremonious saluting of *Montanus*, which continued with tearmes of good will, and by way of insinuation gaue him notice his Iorny was discouered; insomuch that he knowing excuses would increase suspition, in good fashion told him, how *Placandus* had intreated *Coranus* and his Daughter to visit him to morrow. That is very strange (quoth *Franio*;) for euer since the Duke threatned to steale her away, wee neuer saw her but at the Feast. Heere might *Montanus* haue easily stepped into a litle curiosity, as not yet acquainted with any certainty of this story, but loth to be beholding to such a man for a discourse, he somewhat cunningly shifted him off, & by excuse of businesse, as contraries, departed: the one full of diuelish mischief, the other of honest desires.

When *Montanus* came home, he told his father the substance and circumstance of his Iorney, the sickenesse of *Deliona*, the entertainement of *Coranus*, the talke at their dinner, the manner of his departing, and the meeting with *Franio*: withall he asked *Placandus*, if *Deliona* were borne in that Countrie: and the reason, because he thought her beha-

behauiour ouerstately, and that she managed a different cariage from the rest. To be plaine (answered he) it is full twelue yeares since her Father and she were cast on shore by shipwracke; where euer since they haue continued with such applause & regard, that of him we haue esteemed as a man industrious and peaceable; and of her, as a very spatke of delight. Well, (sayd *Montanus*) she will be here to morrow, and then I perswade mee wee shall heare of newes. But returning to *Deltona*, she finding it burdensome to keepe her meditations so inclosed, conceiued of reliefe in reuealing them. Truly (quoth she to her Father) my minde giues mee, this man is but the subiect of some extremitie for a time; else from whence comes this grace? this gallantnesse? this maiestie? withall? His last speach: there is more in *Montanus* discouerie then thou canst imagine. Then belike, quoth *Coranus*, he spake to you of Loue? I cannot dissemble (answered she) he did, & if his own speeches had not conduced me into the fields of expectation, he might questionlesse haue marched in the tryumph of his vertuous conquest. Now was *Coranus* distracted; for remembring his troubles past, the greatnesse of *Deltonas* birth, & the wonderfull matters depending on her discouerie, hee trembled to giue his consent to any disparagement, and yet durst not busse her thoughts with her owne Storie: againe in a presc'ence of *Montanus*, hee suspected a worse displeasure, if it should afterward appeare

that he had been an obstacle to his desires. Therefore with a kinde of indifferencie, like a skilfull " Rider, that neither checketh too hard for feare of " disordering the mouth; nor yet giueth that liberty " to countenance any head-strong defect: hee thus " replyed. Well *Deltona*, hitherto all is well; and since you are thus amended, thinke the Gods keepe their mercy in store, and powers inscrutible: Let not vs then subuert the frame of their workmanship by beeing wilfull or preiudicate, but rather consent to direction and aduice, which resemble the props of a ruinous Building: Bee " therefore affable; yet vse it as a vertue, not imper- " fection. Loue with relation to deseruing worth: yet consent not too soone, least thy good meaning be misinterpreted. Consent at leasure; yet keepe chastity secured, so shalt thou be sure of more desire, and more reuerence: For though men say, they can be contented with a vertuous familiarity; yet is the conquest of that, the *India* of their treasure. With all bee not an enemie to Nature, in " suffering the fruit to perish without vse; but let a " timely Harueſt reape vp the Corne, least it shed as it " stands: Thus shalt thou be worthily counted a rich " manured grounde, and to that ende wert thou part of our first Fathers Inheritance. Oh, but (answered *Deltona*) How shal our weakenesse ouer-sway strong passions? Fancy hath no limitation, and affection is only subiect to the outward demeanour, as you see in the world so many matches concluded

ded in despight of reason. True said *Coranus*, where Vertue preuaileth not against Idlenesse, or good councell helpeth to see the deformitie of Folly, which is as easily suppressed with carefull endeauours, as maintained with retchlesse liberty. But thinke you (answered the halfe fearefull *Deltona*) that inferiour meanes can reuerse appointment? Questionlesse (replied *Coranus*) Destinie is ineuitable, and Fate an Irreuocable decree, yet is it conuenient to tell wilfull youth the contrary, that restraining their frowardnesse, they may suppose it a treason against wisedome, not to be directed by the Clue of aduise. Well (concluded *Deltona*) let the Gods bee Controllers of mischiefe, and men the possessors of reason. Thus posted that night to the Kindome of darkenesse, and the next morning like a bitter root throwne into a dish of sweet sirrupe approched, wherein Fortune threatned to be in this manner maleuolent.

The Story of Franio, an enuious opposite, and riuall of Montanus.

Little knew *Montanus* of *Franioes* affection to *Deltona*, and lesse suspected what inconuenience the former parlee had concluded, and therefore simply nourished the infant Hope of successe: But *Franio* as it were conferring with Malice, exasperated the same with these particulars; that *Montanus* should so sodainely attaine to be *Placandus* Sonne: then from the naturall Country-men so carry away the Prize with the good opinion of the beholders, next amongst all others

ethers to tryumph in his disgrace and hurt: Lastly (as it were to despight him) to seeme acceptable to *Deltona*; so that with the spider onely sucking the venum, hee soothed Enuie to maligne him: Now when Enuie saw her selfe Mistris of conceit, shee desisted not, vntill her associat rage were entertained. Rage againe interdicting reason yeelded to the violence of Hate; and Hate tyrant-like, boyling with the heate of crueltie, meditated nothing but reuenge: with these humours gathered *Franio* together some speciall coadiutors, though not altogether so wicked as himselfe; yet easily seduced, as men vntractable to good, and therefore vnesteemed for their apparant bad, as men liuing in a liberall opinion of conscience, therefore neuer sollicited but for diueliſh attempts, as men wilfully vnciuill, therefore by their harsh demeanours debarred from the better sort: as men wanting, hauing no setled estates of their owne, therefore careleſſe from whom they did purloyne; as men supposing Religion but a matter of Policie, and therefore scorning further feare or punishment. To these besides mercenary reward, and strict alliance, he thus coloured the extremitie of his malice.

Wicked idle men described:

" Although I know your loues and resolutions concurre in one course towards mee, whereby I " shall but seeme idle humoured; either to insinuate " into the first, or pupill the latter; yet must I counte- " nance the occasion of our now meeting with the strength

ſtrength of reaſon, and ſay ſomething to put you in minde, that life is a tedious burden, ouerpreſſed with diſgrace: It is not therefore vnknowne to you, how farre the pride of this Stranger (I meane *Montonus*) hath extended, inſomuh, that if before we maintayned our eſtates with Wealth and credite, wee now remaine impayred in the one, and ſcandaliſed in the other For, whoſe Flockes and Heards haue proſpered, but his? Whoſe name is remembred, but his? Whoſe remembrance applauded, but his? as though wee durſt not put our ſelues forward, or ſeemed vnworthy regard: yet this were ſomewhat tollerable, if yeelding to good parts, Vertue were prized accordingly: But with ſelfe ouerweening hee hath ſet open the incloſure of an arrogant ſpirit, not ſparing to diſpiſe vs all: For beſides the hurt in the fall, and the diſgrace in the hurt, hee boaſteth of it, and threatneth further: Beſides, *Deltonas* ſcorne of my good-will, hee alloweth the contempt, and maketh a tuſh at my deſires: beſides, the naming vs with careleſneſſe, hee courteth with tearmes of oſtentation, and in a iollitie promiſeth ſtrange thinges, which muſt needes aggreuate our miſerie, if wee preuent not the worſt, which will follow by perceiuing the ill, that hath chanced: For my part therefore I neither can brooke her peeuiſhneſſe, nor his preſumption; but haue thus concluded. To morrow ſhee is to goe with her Father to *Placandus*: now becauſe the Duke,

" as a Prince ſtomaking her baſe contradiction, is
" not to be worſe abuſed with a meaner preuention,
" I meane to intercept her Iorney, and preſent her
" vnto him, as if the Heauens had taken notiſe of
" his paſsion. Bee therefore louers of your kindred,
" and credites; for though feares and terrours ſhould
" be proiected, the exployte will aduance vs as men
" of action; my ſelfe will proſtrate my eſtate in
" profuſe manner before you, and the Duke ſhall re-
" maine a powerfull friend, like a maine Rocke to
" breake the force of impious Violence.

When he had deliuered his minde, they onely conſidering the preſent complaint, and falſely miſconſtring the renowne of the buſineſſe, ſoone conſented to what he perſwaded (for indeed heere were none to perſwade otherwiſe then he would conſent vnto) and ſo they promiſed with foure on horſebacke, and fiue well appointed, to be in readineſſe; which though it ſeemed very ſlender againſt an enterpriſe of difficulty, yet had they reaſon to preſume ſufficient againſt a ſilly Mayden, and old Man. But returning to *Montanus*; ere the next morning had fully drawne the Curtaines of light, his remembrance brought him to a kind of feare, that he had ouerpaſſed good manners in not attending her, on whom his very ſoule and thoughts attended: therefore he prepared himſelfe, not forgetting ſome addition of comelineſſe, as if indeed loue had taught him the way to handſomneſſe; and ſo he ſaluted *Corannus*, and againe

and

and againe the much attractiue *Deltona*, whom Hope had long ſince perſwaded to thinke on nothing, but new delight. Thus paſſed curteſie counterchangeably betweene them; and ſo comming along, they entred the freedome of other conference, vntill the freedome and conference preſented them to the bondage of *Franios* treaſon; who had no ſooner a ſight of them, but ſodenly ſtepped foorth proclayming quietneſſe, and all ſhould be for the beſt, conſidering reſiſting increaſed reueng: whereupon one of them irreligiouſly prophaning a Virgins priuiledge by maine ſtrength aduanced *Deltona* toward *Franios* lapp, had not *Montanus* ſtepped to the Weapon, as hee layd it from him, and ran him quite through; whereby the ſteely poynt catching hold of her Gowne in his falling, made her fall too. But when *Montanus* ſaw her fall, it was not a feare, it was a very diſpaire of her life haſtned his race, and by ouer-great deſire to ſaue her, hee might haue loſt him ſelfe; but that *Deltona* cryed, I am well, if you take heed. This directed his other ſence to performe the beſt part of his function, which ſaw *Franio* haſtning againſt him with his Sword drawne. Now was Vallour almoſt betrayde for want of Reſolution, becauſe on the one ſide Death appeared in a deſperate encounter; on the other, Shame in a daſtardly retreat: But when *Deltonas* diſtemperature ſeemed to complaine of the wrong, and that wrong in his owne nature

but in minde of redreſſe, he aduaunced the colours of a magnanimous heart, and ſo as a man experienced in the many changes of execution, he wrapped the Mantle about his arme, and told the beholders they ſhonld ſee a ſtrange ſight, a man on foote and vnarmed encounter with another on horſebacke well prouided: In which ſpirit hee put by the blow with his left hand, and ioyning cloſe to the Horſe, puld him out of the Saddle with the other, not yet letting him eſcape maſterles; but continuing the action, put him ſelfe in poſſeſsion of the Beaſt, and ſcorning to defile his hands with ſuch poyſoning baceneſſe, thought to paſh out his braines, had not feare to die, taught him to counterfeit death to liue: ſo that *Montanus* ſeeing him ſprawle, as killed with the bruſe, left him to wander to the borders of Deſperation, and preſſed to another, in the ſame rage, making him looſe his head for not keeping his Sword.

But who had ſeene *Montanus* on horſebacke with a Sword drawne in his hand, might queſtionleſſe haue been deceiued: for though the Horſe wanted either comelineſſe or qualitie to grace a man; yet was there in him both horſemanſhip and ſtatelineſſe to beautifie the Beaſt, whereby the Villanies were quickly diſperſed; and Miſchiefe complained, her ſeruants had not well learned inſtruction: onely *Coranus* heartned with the likelihood of ſucceſſe, & ſtriking *Buſtoſa Franias* chiefe coadiutor, had ſubmitted to his youth & ſtrength: but

but that *Montanus* vndertooke the quarrell, and with a violent reuerſe, deuided the Sword arme from the body; which onely gaue him this notice, Hee might better run away then fight, as hauing two Legges, and but one Arme.

In the meane while *Deltona* freed her ſelfe of the dead body, and ſeeing *Franio* panting, another ſlaine, a third wounded, a fourth armeleſſe, *Montanus* on horſebacke, & *Coranus* well, ſhe was well too. Thus is the danger ouerpaſſed, and the hurliburly appeaſed; onely *Franio* miraculouſly recouering was glad to liue, glad to ſubmit, that hee might liue; and in the ſubmiſsion excuſing himſelfe by the power of loue, which (though as a riual had been cauſe enough of his confuſion) yet becauſe there wanted all thoſe motiues of Ielowſie, hee being ſo vnworthy a perſon, *Montanus* framed a patience, and left him to the diſhonour of the action, intreating *Deltona* to take in worth this poore peece of ſeruice, and ſet forwarde with a more emboldning comforr. Nay (quoth ſhee) feare and diſcontentment are now to act their partes; My Father therefore and I will ſurely home, and attende the welcome of better ſucceſſe; In the meane ſpace, haſte you to *Placandus*, and let the trueth of the matter blaſon your credite, and your credite with the circumſtances exaſperate the wickednesſe, that the reſt remaine without grudging, and you without blame. This ſhe willed him to do, and this he did, becauſe

ſhee willed: but Fame of her owne diſpoſition had quickly diuulged the accident, and one of the parties enlarged it with many circumſtances, ſhewing « ſome property of goodneſſe, as if Remorce had « bade him firſt confeſſe, then be ſorrowfull; and laſt, endeuour ſatisfaction: The trueth of whoſe report, quickly ſtrook both a feare and hate: For who could not but feare the loſſe of that beautie, the hazard of ſuch perſons, the ſlaughter which did, and might haue enſued? Who could not, but hate the malice put in practice, the manner of the trechery, and the parties, that ſo ſhewed themſelues the ſlaues of villany.

But when *Placandus* ſtomaked the diſgrace, and that a litle meditation had conſidered on the ſhame, if ſuch a preſident might paſſe without controlment or correction. *Montanus* had much adoe to diſſwade him from preſent complaint to the *Duke*, intimating that it could not chooſe but he muſt be made acquainted with the matter by a generall murmuring; now if it pleaſed him to apprehend it as an exorbitant action, without doubt in his owne honour hee would take the cauſe in hand: but if any other humour would ſuffer his conniuencie thereat, then the better courſe were to ſupreſſe it, conſidering iuſtice in ſupernaturall pitty had awarded ſo good a verdict on their ſide. This modeſt behauiour of *Montanus*, produced more loue, and more regard; more loue for thoſe Vertues abounding in him; more regard, for that Wiſedome

Wiſedome, which knew to put them to gracing vſes. All this ſeemed yet inſufficient to his ſatiſfaction, without bringing his Shippe into the ſafe and deſired harbour; wherefore he thought it high time to vnuaile the Maske of his metamorphoſis, rather then thus to hazard his ſoules life, or tye his owne greatneſſe to this courſe any longer; beſides, delay was a kind of torment to his paſsion; and the feare of being ouer-watched with malicious eyes, bade him diſpatch: to which reſolution, hee faſtned his anchor-hold, and Fortune once againe thus dallied with him.

Deltona is reſolued to know what Montanus is, and what ſhal be the iſſue of their loue; & ſo goeth to Marpeſius Cane, where ſhe entertaineth Montanus.

Deltona ſafe at home, thought this ſafety an exceeding diſquiet; yea a very intermixture of torment, conſidering ſhee ſaw ſo many tokens of greatneſſe in *Montanus*, and founde her heart violently caried in the ſtreame of affection towards him, and yet was debarred the happineſſe, which her hope flattered to inioy: like a man brought to the delight of a dellicate Orchard, and by ſtanding on a Bancke ouerlooketh the ſame with a longing deſire of entrance, according to the Gardners promiſe, and yet is delayed with excuſes: Whereupon ſhee aſſured her Father, her reſt was vp, and ſhee would referre it to no other tryall. Hee poore man ſtill doubtfull, durſt not anſwer to the purpoſe, but thought by cunning rather to mittigate the violence

lence, then with reaſon to refell the argument which perceiued by *Deltona* (as if indeed ſhee could haue welcommed an vnmannerly gueſt wilfulneſſe) ſhee bade him not trifell, but conclude with effect. Why then (quoth hee) wee will goe to *Marpeſias* Caue, as well to be thankfull for the eſcape of our late perill, as to preſent our Offertorie, which we haue not yet done: there ſhall the *Anchreſſe* warrant your ſucceſſe, or controll to a new courſe. Glad was ſhe of this: glad was hee of her gladneſſe: the one, allowing any thing, might adde life to her deſires: the other, diſalowing euery thing, might diſparage her worth: yet the next day he brought her along, not deſiſting from a milde paſſage of ſpeach tending to inſtructions, by the way.

Montanus commeth to Marpeſias Caue, and findeth Deltona.

TO this place (O happy Fortune, that conducted him to this place) did *Montanus* ſingle her out: for as the working of his ſpirits draue him to pace out his fancie in the fields, hee ſaw *Coranus* and *Deltona* paſſe the Groue toward the Caue; and knowing the limitation of his aboade would be quickly meaſured: hee very couertly entred the Sanctuarie, as ſoone as *Coranus* had yeelded her the freedome of being alone, and in a kind of diſtemperature betwixt feare and gladneſſe haſted into the roome of *Statuas*, where *Deltona* was officiouſly diſpoſing her affaires. But when ſhee ſaw her Deuotion intercepted, and *Montanus* ſo ſtrangly

ſtrangely audacious, ſhee neither knew what to thinke, or to ſay: for her thoughts were at variance betweene Deſire and miſtruſt, and her ſpeach was ſtopped with amazement; ſo that ſhee almoſt fainted for feare, had not feare in an other nature, leaſt ſhee might be ſurpriſed added life to her fainting. On the other ſide, when *Montanus* ſaw the errour of his raſhneſſe, the firſt liuelineſſe was quite rebated; and the conceit at her diſtemperature, made him checke his folly for being no better aduiſed; at laſt finding ouer-ſhamefaſtneſſe to be more childiſh then man-like, and that a retreat would rather ſhew a demiſſneſſe, then audacitie a fault, he thus framed his treatiſe of pacification.

My moſt deare, and dearer then my deareſt life; Fortune euer maleuolent vnto mee, hath now taken pitty vpon mee, and weary of her tyranny, brought mee to this place of delight: By Loues chiefe happineſſe, I therefore pray thee, make my Hopes legitimate, and my worthily beſtowed Affection, the fortunate child of contentment; leaſt you ouerpaſſe the glory of a ſtrange conqueſt, which may adde to thy deſert, what the greateſt thoughts can imagine, and I repent too late for ſubmitting Princely maieſtie to the cenſure of a Shepheards Daughter. Till this, her amazedneſſe at the accident rather tollerated, then admitted, what was done: but, hearing him name a tytle of that conſequence, a new ioy quickly reuiued her ſpirits: like a friend in ambuſh reuiewing a priuate

" Combat, and ſeeing ſome dangerous inequalitie
" ruſheth out either to deuide the contention, or aſ-
" ſiſt the weaker ſide; this made her thankfull to
" the Nimphs, as if her Orizons had wrought the
propitiation, and accepting it for anſwer from the
Oracle, (as if ſhe had knowne before he had taken
this counterfeite vpon him) ſhee replyed.

Little needed *Montanus*, (for in that title my
" liking conſented to *Montanus*) to haue boaſted
" of Genealogies, or names of Dignitie: ſo that (to
" be plaine,) I was euer carryed with the ſtreame
" of Fancie; yet durſt I not betray my forwardneſſe
" to the violence of Paſsion, vntill I was aſſured of
" her reſpect to vertue, (to whom, ſeeing my vowes
" haue ſpecially combined mee) be thou vertuous,
" and be *Montanus* or Prince, or what thou wilt;
" and I ſhall then loue thee for vertues ſake. What
" call you Vertue, anſwered he, by *Marpeſias* Altar?
By the ſacred Nimphs, by theſe ſtarlike Eyes,
(which I will charme with my kiſſes) I meane
truth, fayth, conſtancie, mariage, and what ſoeuer
Deltona would, that I meane: But thinke you I can
liue in this fire vnconſumed, and ſee this excellen-
cie without deſiring? What ſhould you deſire?
(replyed ſhee:) I hope you will not your ſelfe
deſtroy your ſelfe; or affecting my eſtate, ſeeke to
diminiſh my wealth: for if you like me for good-
neſſe ſake, will you attempt to bereaue me of that
goodneſſe, whereby you would like no more?
Farre be it from my frayleſt imagination (ſayd

(*Montanus*)

Montanus) to proſecute any ſiniſter meanes a-
gainſt your owne will: for by this Table of Con-
tracts I ſweare, I intend nothing leſſe, nor applaud
any thing more, then to behold you like a faire
Planet in a beautious euening; or a pleaſant Plant
in a well manured ground. Then (concluded *Del-
tona*) except incontinent thoughts, and incongru-
ent actions to honour, and my owne reſolutions,
vſe the benefite of victorie with moderation; and
ſo I confeſſe my ſelfe ſubiected: Yet let me know
to whom, conſidering I determine to challenge
the performance, as you enlarged the promiſe.
Firſt, (quoth *Montanus*) be this place, and theſe
Statuas, witneſſe of our League; & Heauens con-
found the violation of our truce, & maligners of
our loues. With that they mutually imbraced
ouer the Altar, according to the manner of Con-
tracts; then kiſſed: and finding it a circumſtance
ſtrengthening the band of Loue, kiſſed againe.
Then *Montanus* ſware to let his deſire run no fur-
ther at randome, then to chaſt entertainement,
vntill conueniencie ſolemniſed their Marriage:
And *Deltona* proteſted, no alteration ſhould diſ-
inherite her opinion of him. Thus gaue Loue a
plaudite to this meeting; and Succeſſe ſeemed glad
to be the period of ſuch reciprocall liking: Yet
Deltona perceiuing the place and opportunitie
agreeing to his remembrance, which already pro-
cured certaine wanton changes, with a prettie
kind of allurement enticed him out of doores;

which hee very carefully yeelded vnto, as well to maintaine her iudgement of his loialty, as to ſupport his owne expectation for the fruition of ſuch ineſtimable worth.

Heere met they with *Coranus*, who more then aſtonied at his Daughters being alone with *Montanus*, ſeemed ſo confounded, that they verily thought they had done amiſſe in being authors of his feare: but hee ſcorning the interception of euery obſtacle quietly pacified him, that nothing had paſſed, wherein Vertue and Honour was abuſed; nor ſhall any thing proceed without liberall ſatisfaction, if a Crowne and Kingdome may counterpoyze her worth. But this troubled him more, as ſuſpecting hee was deluded, till *Deltona* razed out the ſcruple of Diffidence by making demonſtration of his Princely demeanour; and reaſſured, nothing had, nor ſhould impeach her vowes to Chaſtity, but death. Well (quoth *Montanus*) I ſee there are many entries, windinges, turnings, and difficulties in this Laborinth of Loue; and my owne Fortune tyreth mee with vnkind meditation; but I will dally no longer then to morrow, if you come to *Placandus*, a ſtrange truth ſhall direct you into the plaine diſcouerie of my Story: But miſchance once againe, to their better tryall, thus outfaced Delight, and interpoſed this croſneſſe.

Neuer

NEuer did any expresse the conditions of wickednesse in more ample manner, then *Franio*: For first custome made the greatest faultes scarse seeme imperfections, and sinne like a bottomlesse pit; (from whence it is easier to keepe ones selfe from falling in, then once salne to recouer out) had already entrapped him: Next vild suggestion busied in his peeuish eares, as good execute something to recouer his credite, as be still suspected: yea hated in the soile receiued: then the bond, in which he was tied to his Coadiutors, as if the mischiefe they were brought into begged a redresse and satisfaction: Lastly his owne malice taught him, there was no hope of constant loue, where he wished and determined confusion: So that hammering on the Anuile of Enuie he quickly framed this peece: After many watchings both of *Deltonas* retierings, and *Montanus* actions, it was his chance by *Coranus* attending at the dore of the caue to suppose his daughter entertained there a time of deuotion, whereby he deuised to obscure himselfe, and by reason of a hollow Pine saw vnseene, and to his soules torment heard the kinde parting, and appointment of *Deltona* and *Montanus*, whereupon he went to *Fortona*, where *Duke Rugio*, was at this time resident, and rather to satiate his owne reuenge, then for any loue to the *Prince*, he yet made loue the excuse of his reuenge, telling (though fortune helped not his desiers to expresse his dutie toward him) hee

Franio betrayeth Deltona to the Duke: with his story and loue to Deltona.

might with litle company ſhrowded in the Caues, where the Beaſts doe vſe to ſhade, recompence his honourable paſsion with her moderate Rape: For ſhee is determined to goe to morrow to *Placandus*, where, and whither *Montanus* with vaine promiſes hath intiſed her; ſo that if hee pleaſe to take notice of her peeuiſhneſſe, and his contumacie, it was apparant there was little danger in the attempt; and his Fayth could in nothing ſo well be ſeene, as in venturing life and credite for his ſake. But ere the *Duke* entertained this motion, we ſhall heare the Story from the beginning.

The ſtory of Rugio Duke of Fortona & Deltona:

AFter *Katabaſy* had brought the *Tartarians* to ſubiection, that liue betweene *Caucaſus* and the *Caſpian*, his valure quickly diſciplined them in martiall exploites, and wiſdome reduced them to ciuillity and ſtate of gouernment, which conſiſting in nothing ſo much, as magnificenſe of a court, and well ordring of Citties, he preſently erected after his owne name the mightie *Katabaſy* ſomewhat neere the Northen ſhore of the *Hircanian* or *Caſpian* Sea, and hauing maried *Ickataſa Queene* of the hether *Scythia* ſaw the pleaſure of many yeeres, and the towardlyneſſe of too ſonns: Of whom *Zalby* as eldeſt ſucceeded, and at this time enioyed the prerogatiue of a great age: *Fortona* the youngeſt had the prouince of *Zaga* as a large *Dukedome* deſigned, who induced by the royall example of his father built likewiſe the

the *Eſtern Fortona*, and had queſtionleſſe made appearance, from whence he proceeded: but that death ſtomaking his ouer boldneſſe of his bodies conſtitution, as promiſing long life, cald him to an vnkind account, and in his manly progreſſe ſhewed the ſtrength of a ſtronger arme, by which occation was this *Rugio* left like waxe fit for any » impreſion to augment his prodeceſſors glory, or » ſubmit to the vanitie of his youth and liberty: but he, like a diſcreet traueler, that not preſuming on his owne experience, chooſeth a skilfull pilot for » his iorny, ſelected men of honor and vertue to » manage the affayers of his Realme, with whoſe aſſiſtance he made his gouernment compleat: the hope whereof induced *Buſimorus* King of *Bactriana*, to beſtow his Daughter *Paleſtra* vpon him in mariage, whom though his prerogatiue did not fully grace with the height of Maieſtie, yet being a mighty and abſolute Prince, flōuriſhing in the very pride of yeares, and beautified with outward and inward excellencies: her loue and liking ouerſwayed further conceite of ambition; ſo that ſhee liued to the great applauſe of the people, and indiſſoluble reſpect of the *Duke*, the rather, becauſe ſhe prooued a gladſome Mother of many towardly Children, had not a lamentable vntowardneſſe diſprooued her a Mother at all: For quietly trauelling in her hopes to ſee them proſper like men, ſhee was interdicted from making any further progreſſe by the archbaily of the Earth, who con-

demn-

demned her as inexorable to his perpetuall mansion, whereby the princely *Rugio* had many causes of sorrow, and onely one of comfort in the expectation of her issue, to which he added this couenant, neuer to entangle his opinion with any stepmothers deceit: Thus remaining a widower, and assured of further succession, by reason his sons *Philano* and *Kasteppi* marched arme in arme before the colours of Honour, hee began to bee careless of a second wife, for that as a man graced with externall comelinesse, and other causes of entisement, he might either command a wanton Loue, or make choise of his owne satisfaction, and had he not in this maner ouer-liberally payd tribute to his pleasure, surely both for gouernement ouer others, & many choise accomplements in himselfe, he might well haue beene inserted in the Records of good Princes: yet this must be alleadged, the vice neuer grew so contagious, that it extended to spoile or rauishment, otherwise then as gifts and greatnesse compassed.

In the time of this wantonesse florished *Deltona*, amongst the Shepherds of *Nagania*, like an especiall flower in a curious Garden, on whom the worke man bestowed extraordinary cost and labour. To her amongst others, *Franio*, whether perswading himselfe to like, or because he would be thought capeable of some goodnesse, framed a motion of Loue: but she (as if you had seen a Cup presented to a man willing to drinke, and perceiuing

uing poiſon in the bottome ſtandeth amazed, and ſo deſiſteth, ſuddenly ſtarted backe, and hireing for the time an extraordinary ſcorne, aſſured him, ſhe conceiued, that the heauens maligned, and the earth found him burdenſome: with this anſwere, the cumberſome weeds of deſpight quickly choked and ouer-ſpread the fruit of true Loue, and ſo falling backe to his owne inclination, hee preſently nouriſhed a kinde of hate, and hate not onely wiſheth ill, but oftentimes practiſeth meanes of reuenge; though ſome Politicians more cunningly contriue their buſineſſe, making the outſide a falſe inſinuation, and couertly worke villany and deceit: in which humour did *Frania* enter familiarity with *Guleppo* a man very neere the Duke, and for the performance of ſome pleaſing matter of great truſt with him: For you muſt vnderſtand, *Rugio* did not ſo priuatly ſatiate his incontinencie, but that diuers according to the libertie of that time, gaue their ſeuerall verdicts: ſome ſaying, ſinne was intollerable in Princes, by reaſon example quickely reduced the people, and the perſons gaue eaſier notice of their imperfections, like ſpots ſooner ſeene in pure linnen, then courſer cloth. Others would not diſpute ſo vehemently, alleadging their actions had diuers Priuiledges, and themſelues were ſacred from reproch: ſome whiſpered, that a ſecond marriage (conſidering his yeeres and abilitie) would diuert his careleſſeneſſe of the common wealth to a more ſuffi-

cient regard: others alleadged his loue to his Children, (least the secret emulation of a Stranger might be preiudiciall) detayned him through diuers examples from subiecting them to a Stepmother: Some feared the expence of the Treasure, which must needes be too profusely consumed in charge of Apparrell, deuises, and rewards; others tooke in good part that course, because diuers priuate men were inriched, and the mony dispersed within the Dukedom: Some true louers of vertue (as farre as they durst) counselled the retreat to the secure fort of Moderation; others framed themselues to the Princes appetite, nere disputing who esteemed them else for base and demisse: Of this sort was *Guleppo*, a man euer about the Duke, and imployed onely for matters of lasciuiousnes: To him did *Franio* declare the perfections of *Deltona*, and by way of circumstance, inferred the facility of the Rape, which might questionles be effected without infamy, danger, or repining. This brought him to secret conference with the Duke; who searching no further into the ground of his malice, supposed the fellow was willing to make a fortune by any course, and therefore with reward, for that time dismissed him. But presently proclaymed a generall Hunting, which corresponding with their Summer Feast, made him an eye witnesse of *Franios* description; and the first interuiew so pleased his apprehension, that hee tooke the benefite of the two dayes following; and to

colour

colour his meaning, pitched vp diuers Tents, im-
parting the beſt of his game with a plentifull hand
vnto them; and the honeſt Shepheards imputed
his acceſſe to an honourable affability. Now when
true Regard had thus ſatisfied his fancie, Opinion
(though many times the mother of Errours) did
not now deceiue his iudgement, but (as ſhe was in-
deed) he ſuppoſed her excellent, & without doubt
of a better hope, then *Ceranus* child. Heere ſome
ſecret wrought a ſtrange alteration; for Honour
awaked the remembrance of Vertue, and aſſured
him, it was not to be betraied to tranſitory vanity:
yet loth to giue notice of any diſtemperature, hee
commaunded a returne; and one time taking
Guleppo aſide, vrged him with inuention and en-
deuour to helpe his Lord and Maſter. But alas (for
al his firſt confidence) he ſeemed as a man diſtract-
ed at her admirable preſence, rather then officious,
like him, which hauing ſore Eyes, and preſuming
on comfort by refuſing his ſolitary Lodge, little
knew the Sunne was more obnoxious vnto them)
and proteſted hee was neuer ſo ouerwrought in
conceit; for he vtterly deſpaired in the ſucceſſe. Yet
(quoth the Duke) thou ſhalt carry a Preſent to *Ce-
ranus*, & a Iewel to *Deltona*; which accordingly he
did: But as ſoone as his trembling feare had deliue-
red the meſſage, al impatient ſhe replied. Thou ſub-
tile enemy to frailty, & bace broker of wantonnes;
hence with thy traſh, & aſſure thy careles Maſter
of honeſty, that vertue remaineth like an ineſti-

mable Diamond, which is ſtill a pretious Stone,
" though neuer ſo meanely obſcured, and content
" repreſenteth a ſtrong foundation; whereon lay
" what burden you will, it eaſily ſupporteth it. With
this anſwere *Guleppo* againſt his will returned, and the Duke in a manner ſtomacked the contempt, had not the maner of the contempt made him ſuppoſe there was ſome excellencie ſhe ment to keepe him from, which without doubt by the deniall inflamed him the more, and according to the nature of violence draue him without reſpect to goe to *Coranus*, aſſuring him by a Princes faith hee meant no circumuention, but an honourable marriage: this wrought his admittance to *Deliona*, who ſeeing ſhee was to wraſtle with mightineſſe durſt not clogge her ſelfe with ouer many impediments, but with a Sence-rauiſhing Modeſtie appeared, as if ſhee had knowne her owne Metamorphoſis, which ſo inflamed the amourous Prince, that with proteſtation of remaining a kind louing, and conſtant husband, hee perſwaded her to accept of the Dutchy of *Fortona*.

This offer *Coranus* wold haue taken hold of, as thinking it a happineſſe from Heauen, that her Honour ſhould be ſo well preſerued, ſo proſperouſly reintegrated: and a fortune on Earth, that his feares and dangers ſhould at laſt receiue their period; had not her anſwer amazed them both. Although (moſt mighty Prince) it were impoſſible for mee to deſerue ſo great a portion of happi-

neſſe

neſſe, ſo that in all wiſedome I might welcome the bleſsing, as a donatiue from the Gods: yet hath a certaine reſolution impugned all thoughts of mariage, and my Vowes tyed mee to the expectation of euerlaſting quietneſſe in a ſingle life. By the ſmall benefite of my Beautie (for which you haue let looſe the ſtreame of liberall Promiſes) I therefore expoſtulate at your hands, to remember your ſelfe, that is to pacifie your Greatneſſe, from being diſtempered with the denyall of inequalitie & meanneſſe; if not, then let a hard hearted ſtubbornneſſe aſſure, I wil admit of no motions tending to the diſenabling of my poore reſolutions.

Deltona refuſeth to be Dutches of Fortena.

This ſharpe repulſe much diſquieted the Heroick Prince, and confounded the ſimple *Coranus*; yet the manner of her deliuerie, and grace-gracing Graciouſneſſe ſomewhat pacified (though not altered the paſsion: For hee reaſoned, Couſtome had taught Women deniall; and the ſtrongeſt Townes with time and induſtrie were ſubiected: ſo with a kinde of impatient patience he departed. But abſence vſed him more vnkindly then other men, becauſe by often iournies (which the vehemencie of his paſsion occaſioned) he thought Fortune very ſpare; that ſtill inticed him to the inchanting abode of beautie, and allowed him no charme to preuent the perill: hee complained on Loue as tyrannous, that bound his affection to an vnworthy ſubiect, and vrged againſt Nature, for being too too partiall; that ſhee againſt nature

ſhould deſpiſe him with ſcorne, & he (againſt reaſon) ſhould proſecute a matter of ſuch difficultie: ſo that euery thing (for the time) conſpiring againſt him, the violence at laſt conſpired againſt her; either by policie to allure her to the Court, where delicacie and pleaſure might faſhion her to other humours, or by ſtrong hand to ſteale her away: for which purpoſe *Guleppa* for the Duke, and *Frania* for *Guleppo*; and both, as venemous ſpiders in an vnſwept houſe, with induſtrious ſubtiltie attended, and as you haue heard, acted one part of the Tragedie already, which although diuers in a manner complained of: yet becauſe it was a ſtone of the *Dukes* owne rowling, he made onely ſhew of miſlike, neglecting indeed the true vſe of miſlike; ſomewhat diſcouering thereby the errors of greatneſſe.

For men of power in this world ſometime by ſtrong hand beare out the actions of others hauing relation to their pleaſure or profit: ſometime extenuate the fault, & by way of circumſtance excuſe the ſame; like artificiall Painters, whoſe greateſt cunning conſiſteth in the curious ſhadowing of things, though the rich exclaime, and poore reſemble them to flies eſcaping the Cobweb by ſtrength, when the little ones are catched and deſtroyed: ſometime in meere wilfulneſſe they repugne reaſon and perſwaſion, either not perceiuing nor ſuffering other to tell their faults: or vnder colour of ſtate, imagine it demiſneſſe to be attentiue

to

to each exbrobration: ſometime finding the ſecret of delight to conſiſt in varietie, one vice is quickly let in after another, and ſo the Brokers for the firſt are politickly diſcarded; like Flowers worne no longer then their ſcent laſteth; and new Factors cunningly admitted: ſometime their affaires are managed with *Alexanders* fortune, who ſeeing the Gordion knot too intricate to vntie, ſhew'd the force of a ſtrong arme to vncut. In which maner plaied now the Duke his game; for he embraced the deuiſer of this Plot with gladnes, & put it in practiſe with ſpeedineſſe, ſo that he welcommed the next Sunne in ſolemne interceſsions, not to obſcure his face the day following, & haſted to the ambuſh accordingly, wherein an houres tedioufnes had not detained thẽ, before *Franio* gaue the watch-word, *Il tempo*, & they leauing their couert ſuddenly ſurpriſed *Coranus* and his daughter. as an vnlook't for tempeſt turneth the ſailes about, when the ſight of harbour-cheereth the poore afflicted Sailers. By this means is the Duke in poſſeſsion of his much deſired happines, & ſeeing her aduanced vp before him, cõmanded away; none remaning but the aged *Coranus* weeping, & diuelliſh *Franio* laughing. But who had beheld the beautious *Deltona* in this captiuitie, would haue ſworne conſtancy meant to out-braue miſchance, and an honourable minde was not to be ſuppreſſed with misfortune? For ſhe was not altered, nor much diſmaied, only ſtomacking to be ſo circumuented, in his armes thus ſpake. Traitor

The Duke ſtealeth away Deltona.

" Traytour both to vertue and Maieſtie, take heed
" of an intent of wickedneſſe, leaſt deuine Iuſtice
" gather all the ſeruants of Reuenge againſt thee,
" as for the leaſt hope to expect any thing, but hate
" and diſdaine; let my ſcorne of thy preſumption
" make thee anſwere; but concerning the thought
" of wantonneſſe, by the euer-reuerenced *Marpe-*
" *ſia*, I ſweare theſe handes ſhall firſt rende out my
" heart, and throw it in thy face. Be not ſo extreame,
" ſweet and faire *Deltona* anſwered the Duke, I
proteſt nothing is meant againſt thy chaſteſt wiſhes: be onely pacient and moderate, letting time worke his will, thou being willing vnto times working. Thus hee brought her to *Fortuna*, and indeed (as if he had knowen her to be the mightieſt Empreſſe of the world) gaue order for her entertainement accordingly.

The Duke ſtealeth away Deltona through Franios miſchieuous deuice, who is ſlaine in the buſineſſe.

NOw playeth Report her part, for mingling certainties with vntrueths the vprore of the Citie, and the muttering of the people, ſhuffled together many and ſtrange opinions: becauſe a ſeldomneſſe of doing amiſſe, maketh ſmall faults wondred at; and the fauour of the partie wronged ſtriketh a compaſsion, which quickly breedeth ſcandall and repining: For how-euer fauour or power may ſupport an vniuſt Action, or protect an Offender from the penalne of the Law; yet can wiſe men ſee the commuencie, and the better ſort will exclaime on the partialitie.

This

This appeared in the *Dukes* ſtealing away of *Deltona*; at which ſome murmured, and diuers preſumed to reprehend the incontinencie. Amongſt whom the youthfull *Egerius* Minion to *Philano* the *Dukes* elſteſt Sonne; as if ſome naturall reſpect compelled the remorce, aſſured the *Prince*, that the *Duke* much impayred his renowne to deale ſo violently with ſuch modeſty and goodlineſſe. Peace (quoth *Philano*) be aduiſed in the reprehention of *Princes*; yet becauſe thy vertue is pure without diffuſed compounds, I ouerpaſſe the inuection: and ſeeing thou deſireſt ſhee ſhould be choycely intreated, I proteſt to looſe the benefite of my birth-right, before ſhee haue cauſe to complaine.

This *Egerius* was ſonne of a Stranger named *Bertoſus*, dwelling in the Citty, whom thoſe attractiue Vertues, which grace Princes themſelues, did ſo accompany, that all men affoorded him their loue and liking; and the *Duke* applauded his Sonnes choyce. Thus for the time, was *Deltona* quieted, the *Duke* in ſome hope, his Sonne in ſtrange expectation, and *Egerius* in a kind of repining: But thus is *Coranus* in all deſpaire; as much vexed with *Franios* laughing, as his Daughters loſſe, whereupon hee haſted to *Placandus*, and ſtuttered out the matter to *Montanus*, as though feare had made him forget an orderly methode, yet not omitting *Franios* deſpight, who indeede (ſuppoſing miſchiefe vnſufficient without boſting

of it) followed grinning and clapping his hands: but when *Montanus* had heard him out; like the Kings of Beasts, who once enraged roareth and beateth the ground with his taile, not in the nature of lamentatiō, but because he cannot be reuenged: so stormed hee, and seemed in such manner wrathfull, that the rest trēbled: for without further reasoning, taking onely his simple sheephooke, he flung out of doores and almost at the house met with *Franio* crying, *Deltona* was gon, and darest thou Villaine, (quoth he) triumph in such a losse? with all letting a blow flee at his head; either feare, or the smart; or feare of more smart, made him fall, wherein his cowardly submission discouered the fault: But *Montanus* bade him dispatch, leauing tediousnesse and falsehood: With that, hee began his discourse, had not the other interrupted him, exclaiming; Oh deuine Iustice? Let not my eares be defiled with this wretched breath-broker nor my hands forbeare to purge the earth of such a venemous monster; but let him perish in his own shames, least others bee impoisoned with his infections, and mischieuous life. This hee vttered with great fury, and fury not passing without action, strucke with such quickenesse at his head, that the braines spurted from their broken inclosure: which not regarding, hee hasted toward *Fortona*, and hast encreasing distemperature, gaue him no leisure to meditate on the diffusednesse of his iourney. But when *Coranus* was assured of his departure

The death of Franio.

ture, he corected his owne slackneſſe, that made no more haſte, conſidering the many ſecrets and ſtrange occurrents, which his onely knowledge muſt diſcouer: where vpon hee followed with ſpeede.

Now what eſtate was poore *Placandus* in, who left alone with dead *Franio*, and ſeeing the Hurly-burly had gathered the Inhabitants together, knew not which way to excuſe the murther, nor durſt beginne any circumſtances, but the plaine truth; which after his reuerent Age had reuealed, and the pittifull ſtory, with an vnkinde ſcope deciphered the wickednesſe, they quickly conuerted all ſuſpition & hatred for *Franios* death into counſell, the ſtrength of comfort, and chiefeſt proppe of *Placandus* life. Why then (quoth hee) am I indeed reuiued, that like men, like honeſt men, like honeſt wiſe men you wil accord vnto reaſon; and like friends, yea true-hearted friends, you will not faile in aduerſitie: let vs therefore giue the dead his due Ceremonies, and liue our ſelues in good hopes, that *Montanus* and *Coranus* will returne with glad tydings. But other affaires detaine them beyond expectation, and we muſt haſt to *Fortona*, to know the certaintie.

Finis Libri primi.

Trebizond.

THE SECOND BOOKE OF the Hiſtorie OF TREBIZOND.



Imprnited at London by W. White,
for *T. Downes* and *E. Dawſon*,
1616.

To the right Honorable Counteſse of HVNTINGTON.

RIGHT HONORABLE,

BEſides the ſcandall impoſed vpon idle Diſcourſes, there is euer a wanton errour depending of preſumption in the choyce of ſome Patron: ſo that when other men had flattered my owne eaſie ouerwrought conceit to be an aduenturer in the troubleſome ſea of Opinion: I thought it moſt befitting to looke out for ſome handſome props of ſupportation, and ſo haue placed the Daughters in one circle with the Mother: Yea, ſuch Daughters, and ſuch a Mother, that mee thinkes you moone togeather like faire Planets in conſpicuous Orbes; from whoſe influence can proceed nothing, but ſweete preſages: So that hereby you cannot chooſe, but breath with her one ſpirit of happineſſe; and I be cheared with ſtrong aſſiſtance againſt any calumniation.

I pray you therefore pardon this intruſion, and examine my Character no further, then my confidence that ſo great Honour and Worth, will not diſſent from their owne properties, and giue me leaue to wiſh your merit the Wiſhes of ſuch hearts, as leape for ioy at the naming of loueline ſſe and Beautie: To both which, with all other excellencies in your Honourable ſelfe,

I am truly deuoted:

To. Gainsforde.

The Second Booke of the Hiſtorie of TREBIZOND.

SVch was the haſte *Montanus* made after the *Duke*, and *Coranus* after *Montanus*; and of both to deliuer *Deltona*: that you might haue deciphered in *Coranus* the properties of Feare and Hope: his Feare, in the vntying the intricat knots of *Deltonas* fortune: his Hope, that the *Duke* would not degenerate from honour and vertue. And in *Montanus*, of Loue and Anger; his Loue, ſuppoſing nothing impoſsible to be attempted; his Anger, aſſuring to be compaſſed, what ſo euer might be attempted: and thus went hee forward vnaccompanied, vntill *Coranus* ouertooke him entring into the Towne, which they found full of rumours by reaſon of the accident. This imboldned him to bid *Montanus* ſtay awhile: for Wilfulneſſe repenteth, when Reaſon openeth the eyes of Vnderſtanding, and his Counſell muſt be the Threed to direct him out of this Labotinth. Counſell how you will (quoth *Montanus*,) ſo it tende to recouer *Deltona*. Then muſt you be attentiue a while (replyed *Coranus*;) for ſtrange and dangerous is the Storie. Is it time now

Montanus followeth the Duke into the Cittie to ſee what will become of Deltona who is diſcouered to be an Emperours daughter.

now (answered hee) to tell tales, or to tryfle? No, no: Pleasure and conceites are not futable to this feare and haste: besides, in matters of necessitie, delay openeth the sluce of Inconuenience. Tush (sayd *Coranus*) you mistake mee much. But O eternall Powers! whom doe my eyes behold? *Bertosus*, loyall *Bertosus*; my brother and deathsfellow *Bertosus*? With that, they saluted a comely Old man of the Cittie, who mooued with the first vprore, and like a right Naturalist thirsting after Newes, posted to the Court to be beholding to Truth: for hauing a Sonne named *Egwias*, of secret respect with the princely *Philano* the first borne of the Duke, hee presumed on his knowledge and credite; but thus intercepted by *Coranus*, whom in thirteene yeares hee had not seene, nor euer supposed to haue seene, as long since seeing the neuer satisfied Ocean swallow him vp, hee was confounded: the strangenesse making them both as strange, vntill the extasie moderated, gaue Remembrance leaue to play her part; then appeared Knowledge and Comfort in full life; and after a second ceremony of kindnesse tuned the organs of Speech to this purpose. But doth *Brizaca* liue (quoth *Bertosus*?) I, if *Trezobore* be preserued (said *Coranus*?) Then hath the Gods mightily fauoured (*Coranus* replyed) *Bertosus*. And miraculously protected *Bertosus*, (answered *Coranus*.) Now was *Montanus* astonied; for these new names, increased new thoughts; and the strange-

Coranus meeteth his brother Bertosus in Fortopa.

nesse

neſſe of the nouelty rebated his firſt heate, diſtempering him with a trembling deſire. Oh (ſaid *Coranus*) now ſhall you heare a diſcourſe of ſome trouble: bee therefore more conſiderate (good *Montanus*) and let *Bertoſus* ſalute thee. With that, a mannerly ceremony paſſed betweene them, vntill *Bertoſus* counſelled to returne to his houſe, where the benefite of Aduice might be thus farre aduantagious vnto them, that the Duke made acquainted with the matter, would queſtionleſſe proceed in a new courſe.

But ere they were entred into a full paſſage of ſpeech *Egerius* all ready enamoured on the excellent *Deltona*, & tormented to ſe another in poſſeſſion of his delight, came home to his father very ſad: yet was he the ſadder for comming home, becauſe ignorant, whom his father accompanied, his determination of ſolitarineſſe ſeemed diſappointed; and but that the gallantneſſe of *Montanus*, as it were naturally attracted a reſpect, his firſt courſe had entertained a further ſullenneſſe: yet being a Courtier, who ſeeme to be the profeſſors of humanity, & indeed arrogate to themſelues the eſſential knowledge of curteſie and good manners, but eſpecially induced by ſome regardable appearance, hee ſaluted them with a very good grace; whereby delight it ſelfe ſeemed to play in the greeting. For *Egerius* countenance (not ſo much as down'd with the difference of Sexes) kept an extraordinary grauity, & *Montanus* comely-

neſſe an vnaccuſtomed temperature, which pleaſed *Egerius*, and *Egerius* pleaſed *Montanus*; who demanded many queſtions tending rather to neceſsitie then curioſitie, anſwered without ambiguitie or circumſtance.

In the meane while *Coranus* and *Bertoſus* paced out the very ſecrets of their knowledge, and concluded to participate the ſame to *Egerius*, who hauing the greateſt intereſt in the matter might remember himſelfe, and remember the Duke, that *Deltona* was farre ſurpaſsing her ſelfe; whereupon *Bertoſus* not without a reuerent contrarietie taking *Egerius* by the hand, thus began. If the Gods had not their Iudgements inſcrutible, and vnited to ſupernaturall powet, a prerogatiue beyonde mans capacitie, wee might ſlightly eſtimate their mightineſſe, and ſtep into preſumption of our induſtry: but becauſe they will giue vs notice of their all working preeminence, miraculous and ſtrange accidents draw vs to admiration, and that men may be ſubiected, euen the greateſt eſtates feele the ſcourge of affliction: This appeareth in the Diſcourſe now intended. For concerning your ſelfe; no longer Sonne, nor *Egerius*, but princely *Trezoboro*. Concerning *Deltona*; no longer *Deltona*, nor *Coranus* Daughter; but priſceleſſe *Brizaca*. And concerning vs; no longer the reputed fathers of *Mengrelius* children, but loyall vaſſals to the Emperour of *Trebizonda*. With that he vnfolded many intricate circumſtances of his

Egerius and Deltona diſcouered to be brother and ſiſter, the Emperour of Trebizonds children.

his birth, losse, and fortune; whereby it appeared, that *Egerius* was sonne to the Emperor *Mengrelius* of *Trebizond*, by the name of *TreZobore*: that *Deltona* was his twin Sister and called *BriZaca*; and *Coranus* with *Bertosus* were brothers, to whose trust the charge of their infancie was committed.

But thinke you, did *Montanus* heare this? or did hee wonder at the hearing? or remayned he silent at the wondring? or seemed hee amazed in the silentnesse? Surely he heard, wondred, kept silence, and was amazed: yet quieted his thoughts, and gaue Time a little scope to play with the nouelty, expecting a prosperous euent: But *Egerius* adding a new spirit to former towardlynesse, and yet retayning his wonted affabilitie, replyed. Seeing it hath pleased the Gods thus to make you the instruments of their power, let not me be ingratefull either in the diffidence of their prouidence, or neglect of regard to you: whose honesty, loue, and paines, haue made tryall of so many inconueniencies for our sakes: Yet least the Duke coupling Power and Wilfulnesse togeather, yeeld Intemperance full liberty (and so we may lament, but not redresse the mischiefe) I thinke it requisite to awake his sleeping honor, by sounding the trumpet of strangenes into his eares, & telling that Fortune hath an errand to relate. This was vttered with such an alacrity of spirit, and staiednes of speech, that the hearers promised to them selues, what soeuer the expectatiõ of a Prince could afford: where-

upon the next morning they accompanied him to the court, & *Egerius* saluting the princely *Philano*, was answered as if loue had in sumpathy pleased one another. Then (quoth *Egerius*,) let this loue acquaint the Duke, that a matter of importance is to be discussed, and how I am to impart the circumstance. Heere omitted friendship no part of her dutie; for the willing *Philano* presented himselfe before his Father, and certified their accesse and the cause.

But whether a feare to be preuented of enioying *Deltona* made euery conceit a suspition of her hazzard, or some vncomfortable misdoubt fore-tolde anothers interest to the thing he vsurped; he quite degenerated from his owne Customes: vntill *Philano* seeing his *Egerius* attend vnregarded, conferred againe with the Duke; and he sommoning his Counsell, as if the Common-wealth claimed a redresse, was at last ouer-ruled by them to pen fill out his vertue in more liuely colours: whereupon *Egerius* encouraged, when the day of hearing lifted vp her head to be seen, aduanced his speech to be thus vnderstood.

The History of Mengrelius and Kalucki.

AFter *Sawarchanus* (most mighty Duke) sonne of *Rhecus*, Sonne of *Demorgus*, the ancient Inhabiter of the Caues of *Sarmatia*, had reduced his people to a ciuilitie by his discipline, and with the example of valour countenanced their courages; hee attempted the Empire of

of *Terbizonda*, and preferred for preuailing, so relied on their obedience and loialties, that *Colchides*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Capadocia* were also subiected, with which renowned; a time of peace afforded him leisure to recompence the time of his paines with the reward of delight. But he apprehending the royaltie of other Monarchies, applyed himselfe to immitation; neuer desisting, till hee had his Gouernment and Court, a very Nursery of state and glory: so that you might lawfully haue giuen that *Lustrum* the preeminence, considering the people had the practise and obseruation of glorious things, and *Samarchanus* himselfe seemed a man compleat in all circumstances of prosperitie.

For concerning the gifts of the minde, they were such rare qualities, as contained more vertue in their operation, then shew in the workemanship: yet such work-manship as made adelicate obiect to the eye, and enriched the possessor. His direction in publicke affayres consisted of such parts, that very aspiring mindes rather submitted to him, then soothed their owne ambition; and in his priuate Court the pallace was a receptacle of the nobly disposed, and well enclined attendants, whom neerenesse to the Prince, made rather study for his Honour, then their owne pleasure: His state commanding affection, for moderation of greatnesse, rather then feare for mightinesse of power; yet was his power of such sufficiencie, that diuers Kingdomes were in tributorie

ſubiection: His libertie admitted Military exerciſe and honourable expenſes, neither lauiſh to ſatisfie a vaine oſtentation, nor too ſparing, to diſcouer any defect that way; His goodnes in generall a ſufficient ſubiect to talke of; and in particular ſo many by-wayes to perfection.

As for Fortunes portion, ſhe diſtributed it with a plentifull hand, and contrary to her ſelfe, with a iudiciall foreſight: His Territories many and rich; yet none ſo rich as well gouerned: His Magnificenſe augmented in goodly Buildings, and coſtly furniture; yet neither ſo much reſpected, as their orderly vſe obſerued: His Treaſure amaſſed by regardable prouidence without exactions or cruell penalties: not yet omitting, what princely bounty ſhould remember; nor admitting, what powerfull licentiouſneſſe might inferre: His royaltie beautified with ceremonious pompe and regall neceſsitie, his happineſſe conſummate in a glorious *Queene*, towardly Succeſsion, honourable Allies, dutifull Attendants, ſure Subiectes, and friendly Neighbours.

Touching the Bodies alowance, the firſt Parent of the earth boaſted in her owne workmanſhip; for his Liniaments had a decent vniformity, and Fauour triumphed to be ſetled in Maieſtie: His Countenance retained as well an amiable Chearefulneſſe, as manly Grauitie; yet neither enclined the one to childiſh Effeminateneſſe, nor the other to ſecure Exaltation: ; His Speech was euer repoſed,

ſed, and the manner of his cariage ſuch, as neither ſhewed any wreſted motions of Bountie, nor degenerating conditions of Princely demeanor: and although the continuance of a long age might haue brought her accuſtomed tedioufneſſe; yet health correſponded to his luſtineſſe, and an able body emboldned him to the naturall diſcharge of his Fancie; ſo that the greateſt were his fauorites, & the yong *Ruſſian* Dutcheſſe *Balutaſa* his Spouſe. Of whom (moſt excellent Duke) the curioſeſt Rhetoricke will rather manifeſt a willingneſſe, then abilitie to ſpeake; and in whoſe prayſes the beſt ſufficiencie will ſhorten the iorney to her eſtimate. For in beeing ſo great a perſon, her worth » appeared the more, (like an illuſtrious Carbuncle » ſet out to the beſt purpoſe, that wee may perceiue » how Art can beautifie Nature; and becauſe a reuerent loue tempered other paſsions with Reaſon, ſhee liued famous to the world, and gracious to *Samarchanus*, ioyning to other bleſsinges goodly Sonnes, and fayre Daughters; deuided into ſuch couples, that for Men, who might compare with *Kalucki* and *Mengrelius*: for Women, who could match with *Arcabella* and *Piſana*.

Theſe being the choyce fruite of a flouriſhing Graft had perfected the beauty of this Garden, and made an vpſhot to proſperitie, but that the contention for a Kingdome eclipſed the glorious

ſunſhine; and diſdaine of partnerſhip in the wearing of a Crowne, ware out the print of bleſſed continuance: Yet did the life of their Father containe ill will within limitation, and his death make the ſtrife the greater; becauſe it was for ſuch a ſoueraignety. For no ſooner payde *Samarchanus* his debt to Nature, yeelding to the ſommons of not ſo haſty, as vndalliable a Commaunder, leauing *Balutaſa* in ſorrowfull mightineſſe, his Children in doubtfull expectation, his Subiects in ſuſpition of new troubles, his adioyning Confederats in opportunitie of reuolt, and euery one fearing their owne loſſe, by the loſſe of ſo good a *Prince*: But *Kalucki* through the prerogatiue of his Birth-right, claymed the Diademe; which clayme was yet reclaymed by the great working ſpirit of *Mengrelius*, and partiall affecting loue of *Ballutaſa*, who imboldned with her alliance in *Ruſſia*, and the *Northen Europa*: but eſpecially preſuming on her ſonnes vertues; with which he had drawne out the peoples loues to the greateſt length, reſolued to endeauour his aduancement, ſo much more gracing him, by how much opinion thought him to ſurpaſſe *Kalucki*, not differing from our kinde of Cockering mothers, which commonly dally with the yongeſt, & without apparant reaſon make ſometimes their affection partiall: yet had not her wilfullneſſe been caryed with ſo ſtrong a current, if other ſtepps had not helped her vp, as ſome ſpeciall coadiutors, amongſt

mongſt whom *Corambello* Duke of *Raganda*, *Putraſſo* Steward of the Pallace, and *Hardubax* Lord of ſeauen Ilands, were men of great ſufficiencie. This made her goe forward, and her forwardneſſe bade him not faint in the proiect; whereupon incited with his Mothers reſolution on the one ſide, and the glory of the exployt on the other, hee proſecuted a wonderfull attempt, and ſhe ſommoned the aſſembly of eſtates, vrging many reaſons for the preferring of *Mengrelius*.

But *Kalucki* all impatient at ſo vnlookt for beginning ſtood amaſed, rather ſullen with anger, then affrighted with feare, till at laſt, the generall ſilence (for who durſt preſume in a cauſe of ſuch importance) reduced his diſtemperature to conceiue, that if the proiect were a matter premeditated, ſhe then had a faction prepared, and his ſufficiency was doubtfull: But if it were onely a Mothers partialitie, hee ſuppoſed by the intimation of Treaſon, and the penaltie to depoſe her Regencie, and contract their Securitie by honorable inſinuation. "Why Lords (ſayd he) ſhall *Samarchanus* liuing ſo "well, be now rewarded ſo ill? that daring not pre- "ſume to immagine him the leaſt wrong, you now "goe about the greateſt iniurie, by manifeſt repug- "nancie to neglect his appoyntment, and odious "defamation to diſenable his Sonne? And Mother, "(though vnworthy the leaſt letter in ſo louing a "word) either will it fall out to your ſhame to diſ- "honour ſo well deſeruing a Husband: or to my "

" proch to be vpbrayded with Baſtardie? elſe can
" neither the law of Nature preferre any beſides my
" ſelfe; or of Nations giue ſo much as a colour to a
" younger Brother. But as for you, whom ſtricter
" alleageance combineth to the obſeruation of our
" ſtate and perſon, wherein dare you haſſard your
" ſelues, & ſuffer Iudgement to be abuſed, as though
" you reſpected not, whether the drinke were poy-
" ſon, ſo it be brought in a Golden cupp? As though
" *Mengrelius*, becauſe more effeminate, were there-
" fore more fitte to reuenge your wronges: And
" *Kalucki* (becauſe a peeuiſh Woman, thinketh not
" ſo faſhionable) muſt therefore be diſſeiſed of his
" Birth-right? Take heed in time, as yet your Pro-
" uidence may dam vp the ſluce of our Iuſtice: but
" if you ſuffer your ſelues to be carried againſt your
" duties; by death I ſweare, no ſubmiſsion ſhall make
" an attonement. Now to you Sir: (an vnpleaſant
" countenance threatning his Brother with a follo-
" wing miſchiefe) remember that Principalitie abi-
" deth no concurrent; and proſecuteth an Enemie
" to confuſion. Beſides, the name of a Traytor, re-
" ſembleth a conſuming Leproſie, which infecteth
" all the body, and leaueth ſcandall to poſteritie.
" Doe not haſſard therefore the benefite of life, by
" vaine Securitie; Nor be ſo beſotted to thinke, that a
" fleering looke, or bace popularitie can alien the
" loyalties of ſo many truſtie Subiects: But aſſure
" you, I challenge this Empire as hereditarie; thy
" ſelfe for a Subiect, the reſt obedient, and all confe-

derats

derats aſsiſtant. Thus ſomewhat forgetting his firſt intent of moderation, hee approached the royall Throne, and had without interruption aſcended, but that *Ballutaſa* interceded, and in this manner ſet the fire of Rebellion on a blaſe.

I deny not but thou mayeſt boaſt, as the immediate ſucceſſor of *Samarchanus*, and waſt in times paſt reputed as a bleſsing to a Mother: But doe not thinke wee are ſo ſimple and inconſiderate, that hauing the choyce of two ſeueralles, to admit the vnworthieſt. I doe therefore without euaſion or circumſtance, condemne thee for froward and badly diſpoſed; and coniure theſe rather to take compaſsion on the proſtrate neceſsitie of the Common-wealth, then pitty thee for a priuate complaint, ſeeing thoſe degenerating humours, which make Princes odious, are already ripened in thee: the remembraunce whereof hath exaſperated my diſpleaſure, and mooued theſe to remooue thee, as preiudicate. Beſides, it is the will of the Gods to aduance a Steward, which may husband their Plenty, and not ruine their Inheritances. How can it then equipage mine Honour, that the name of a fonde affectionate Mother, ſhould make mee forget the dutie of a prouident Princeſſe? Wherefore you louers of Goodneſſe, it is for your ſakes, I digreſſe from my ſelfe, and for the common proſperitie I diſable *Kalucki*; conſidering Obedience is rather the ſeruant of Vertue, then titular Dignities;

" which can seldome be incident, where Deformitie
" maketh loathsome. Pride ouermastreth, Heart-
" burning incombreth, and Tyranny threatneth a
" very conuulsion of your gouernement.

But as a forward bitternes might haue aggrauated his disgraces; the wrathfull first borne of this disquietted Queene in impatience made a sudden approach vnto her; and directed a most dange-
" rous blow (for by this time quickneſſe had vn-
" sheathed the blade,) as if the vnpleasing messenger
" of Reuenge meant to proclaime the strange death of an Empresse, had not *Mengrelius* waled with his owne body, and by securing her, sustayned the smart of a grieuous wound; whereby seeing the fire was kindled, hee betooke him to his Guard; and making forward, had the assistance of other coadiutors. Now when *Kalucki* perceiued the gates of Treason were set open, hee exclaymed on the mischiefe, and commaunded the true louers of their Prince to performe their duty. Whereupon many set themselues on worke, and the place bred rather confusion, then the confusion dispatch; so that euery one shuffled vp some action or other. *Mengrelius* set Pollicie and Valour on worke to extenuate the furie: *Kalucki* countenanced Rage and Despight to punish the reuolters: As for the rest; some pressing forward could neither auoyde a pitious slaughter, nor keepe possession for the body to stand vpright: others (vnwilling to be so endangered) were ere the midst

midſt of the hall had ſhortned their iorney, either in the throng ſtifled, or by the commers in, compelled backe: Some vſed ſuch weapons for n eceſſity, which in quietneſſe were borne but of faſhion; others hauing none wreſted from ſuch, as could not reſiſt: Some tooke the Pallace furniture, as not regarding how they helped themſelues; others made euery thing offenſiue, as not caring how they iniured the reſt: Some exclaymed on the reuolt, crying, The Gods protect *Kalucki*; others ready to innouation, wiſhed *Mengrelius* Emperour: Some with vnſeaſonable wiſedome perſwade a pacification; others with ſtrange hearts fraughted with Treaſon, ran away with the violence.

Kalucki diſpoſſeſſed of the Empire by his younger brother Mengrelius: ſeateth himſelfe in the further Tartary.

THus was a dangerous vnquietneſſe begun with a few mens deaths, which no doubt had ended with the loſſe of many mens liues, had not *Carambello*, *Putraſſo*, and *Hardubax*, taken the cauſe in hand for the Empreſſe, and by force ouermaſtred *Kalucki*: For *Carambello* rather addicted to *Ballutaſas* wilfulneſſe, then fearing the diuiſion of the Empire, made yet this feare a colour of his partiality, and ſo contriued the matter, that *Kalucki* conſented to a ſurceance of his rightfull claime, and ſubſcribed to a compulſiue depoſition: This neceſsitie conuented, and the day of truce in *Bellonas* Temple ratefied theſe particulars.

That *Mengrelius* ſhould raigne during life: but

Kaluckies

Kalukies succeſſors, or him ſealſe ouerliuing to repoſſes the *Diadem*.

That *Kalucki*, and as many as would make try-all of his fortune, after certaine ſummes of mony diſburſed ſhould within twenty dayes depart the territories of the *Empire*, and within twenty howeres the Verge of the Court:

That if *Mengnelius* by the benefit of maryage were bleſſed with the effect of mariage, the comfort to be fruſtrate in loſſe of their liues, and the name of a Father forgotten in reſpect of the Male children:

That if *Kalucki* taking notice of theſe couenants infringed, within one yeere conuicted not the deceite, the gouernment to remaine ſubiect to election, and no man culpable to reſiſt any vneſtabliſhed:

That no ſubiect to the *Empire*, ſhould repine at theſe particulars, and the abettors of any couen remaine faultie, as in caſe of high Treaſon:

Thus was *Kalucki* compelled to take his farwell of an ingratefull Country, and diſobedient people: But magnanimity ſhowing rather a ſcorne then a grudging at their diſloialties, left them without ceremony to the reproch of their errors, and poſted to the hope of better fortune, wherein his expectation was not deceiued. For no ſooner abandoned he theſe Confines, but hee was acceptable to other Countries: and the place, which after much variety ſetled his abode was the further

Kalucki ſetled in Tartaria.

Tartary

Tartary, a place yeelding a receptacle for his state and with a strange fortune opening the Gates of the magnificent *Coralla* to his wishes. Heere in short time, hee procured a worthy soiorner, the Country reioycing, where hee remayned, and the world trembling, whither his fame was dispersed. For honorable industrie increased Riches, Riches amplication, amplication reuerence, and reuerence feare; which though against others engendred hate, yet toward him, was the cause of loue, in regard hee was loth to acquaint them with any displeasing Newnes, and they respectious to giue no occasion of inconsiderate neglect: but remained in one vnitie of loue, as hee did in one method of discipline.

When *Alemgrelius* saw his ioy triumph ouer Anoyance, and that hee had leasure to actuate his Ambition, he proclaimed a publike Celebration, as if he meant to make the day of this Peace, a glorious Feastiuall, whereby the people were acquainted with vnacquainted Ceremonies, & confirmed the manner of the State, knowing wherto appoynt, and to whom proportion both Honour and respect. This was made manifest, because they solemnised his Coronation with willingnesse, beautified his Pompe without, laugmented his Triumph with Presents, and dinged their good Opinion with acclamations. And truely (most mighty Duke) whether he had a desire in him selfe, to make his Renowne a Worke by obiect

Report; or that his Fathers example suborned his industry, hee performed so many things tending to perfection, that euery one adored him as a God in the world, and magnified the time as the yeares of true comfort, wherein hee might haue tempted the reuenger of all contempt with scorne of alteration, had not remembrance of the Oath to his Brother, and Couenants to *Corambello*, dashed out all our boldning conceites: much like an Aprill tempest chancing in a moment to the dismay of a Gardner, boasting of a sun-shyning morning to grace his handy worke, this stroke a peeuishnesse for a time, and did indeed adde an outward countenance of demission: For considering, that in hauing a Wife, the blessing of a Wife was to be quite extinguished; and the name of a Mother a most wretched title in her owne Children, by reason of their murder: Who could but tremble at the conceit, and exclaime on the vnadui sednesse of such enforcement? Till at last, Time the consumer of all things, wore out the print of that feare. Youth, the maintayner of Carelessnesse, would needes haue recourse to Pleasure: Nature, an enemie of Douises, scorned to be counterchecked with Appoyntment: Fortune, the Mistris of of Alteration, scorned the stedfastnesse of mans Purposing: and Loue, the Father of Fancie, sagged to be suppressed with a peeuish Promise: Wherevpon they conspired in a league, and brought him to the house of Wantonnesse, where he was welcommed

commed according to his worth, and ouer-eſteemed for his wealth and greatneſſe. For whether hee meant to ſatiate an incontinent liberty, heere were ſuch, as knew the power of a Princes dalliance; or whether hee meant to limit his affection to a vertuous choyce, heere were ſuch as ſecured chaſtity with a victorious army of good thoughts; but when that Iudgement was to be giuen, though his communication extended to variety of diſport, hee onely liked his ſiſter *Arcabella* to their greater deſpight; whom fauour for beautie, beautie for countenance, countenance for comelineſſe, comelineſſe for delight, and all for Maieſtie, had ſo extraordinarily graced, that neither kindred interpoſed her neereneſſe, nor conceit of miſchance to come rebated his deſires, but hee made tryall of her modeſtie, and layde downe his Crowne as the reward of conſent: and ſhee conſidering that Emperours make no Prentiſhipp of their Contracts, without delay or nicetie, tooke hold of opportunities bayrie top.

Menarelius marieth his ſiſter Arcabella.

Thus was the Mariage happily concluded, and ſpeedily celebrated with glorious Triumphs belonging to ſtate, and ſtately continuance appropriate to Kings, ſo that *Ballutaſa* as a gladſome Mother reioyceth, and *Arcabella* as a happy wife is comforted, till requited with an husbandly duty; and making ſhew to the world of an irrecouerable loſſe by her ſwelling Wombe, an vnkind remembrance checked her iollity, and affoorded occaſion

casion to others in this manner to descant. What meanes *Mengrelius* now, to performe the couenant so vnnaturally graunted? or violate his oath so dangerously made? Shall an Emperour be a bloody executioner of his owne Childe? or a Tyrant ouer his Country? Must *Trebizonda* be reproched for immanitie, or reprooued for perfidiousnesse? Can it stand with naturall pietie to destroy faultlesse Infants? or regardable Honour to tryfell out so strange a composition? Surely Content repineth at the inequalitie: For either shall *Kalucki* haue occasion of new Warre, or a wretched Murder continue an old Peace.

Mengrelius killeth his first Sonne.

NOtwithstanding these doubts, though *Arcabella* might haue made him a ioyfull Father, yet he ere nine howers, caused her to be a sorrowfull mother. For the Child was marked to the house of death, as soone as the birth gaue notice of his sexe; which done, vnkindly pacified, *Arcabella* vnderstood it must be so; and the too late repenting, *Balutasa* was assured it should be so. Thinke not yet any outward Maske so obscured the continuance of sorrow; but many perceiued the Emperours allacritie dulled, and the very life of the Court discouraged. As for *Arcabella*, whom dellicateneſse made more subiect to griefe, griefe manifested in her the effect of griefe, sadnesse, and teares, which by reason of neglect, resembled Spots made

made by the enuy of an vnlucky hand on a white wall; Or vnluckly ſtaines diſgraciouſly chancing to ſome pure Linnen: nor was this vngentlenes ſo ſatisfied, but enforced as many ſighs as teares, and pangs as ſighes; with whoſe violence the heart had broken, but that the ſpirit driuen as farre as the paſſage of the mouth by the life of the tongue procured ſome eaſe.

O inſcrutible powers (qd. ſhe) whom the frame of Heauen, and the wonders of the world compell to acknowledge, can you ſeeme ſo inexorable, that after ſo many & forcible interceſsions, I yet am deſtitute of reliefe, and ſubiect vnto all wretchednes and opprobry. For is not the glory of my life quite raced, when the benefite of hauing children, in the hauing them is diſappoynted? Who elſe lamenteth not, when this bleſsing is wanting? Who elſe complaineth for enioying the prerogatiue? Better had it been, that I had neuer been the louing child of a happy mother, then to be now the vnhappy mother of an vnfortunate child; whom impartiall Deſtenie hath not onely denyed, but an vnnaturall Father deſpightfully murdered: Murdered? yea too too cruelly murdered; yet witleſſe and impatient? To complaine of my Emperour muſt proceed from paſsion; for he is bound to honorable ſtrictneſſe, & I am ſubiect to dutie and alleagence: To complaine of Fortune, will detect more weakenes: for ſhe diſtributeth with careleſnes, and is inconſiderate in her fauours: To complaine

" againſt the Gods is execrable: they framing all
" things to good purpoſe, and we vnframing them
" to bad appetites. What ſhall I then doe? caſt
" ouer the account againe, and then euen I, hapleſſe
" *Arcabella* muſt ſupport the burden of this horror;
" I conſented to diſappoint the firſt borne of his
" birth-right, and am now reuenged with my firſt
" borne liues right: I infringed the law of nature:
" and am now tormented againſt the law of all na-
" tions; and am now remedileſs becauſe my hopes are
" abortiue, and am now without all excuſe? For I
" was an Actor in *Kaluckis* tragedie, and muſt con-
continue an agent in *Mengrelius* miſerie.

Theſe broken ſpeeches had not their paſſage in ſtillneſſe, for *Sabina* her *quondam Nurſe* preſſed with dutie and care ouer-watched, and ouer-heard her diſtemprature, and for feare ſhee might haue burdened her tender heart with to ſore conceit, diſcouered her ſelf, amd thus preſumed to try whether counſell and comfort had made a league to-
" gether. Leauing (*moſt peerleſſe, and long I hope to*
" *continue moſt peereleſſe Princeſſe*) to agrauate your
" griefe either with as much griefe, or more teares;
" I hope my former vndiſsimuled *Zeale* ſhall iuſti-
" fie, that the imparting of your ſorrow hath deui-
" ded the ſame, wherfore I thought it part of my
" dutie to ſtudie for redreſſe, which the Godes I
" hope haue conſented vnto in this manner: Let a
" iorney bee made to *Delphos*; There will the O-
" racle either diſanull the vnmercifull couenants, as
ouer-ruling;

ouer-ruling by deuine reuolution, or ratifie the »
crueltie, as a diſtributiue iuſtice in reuenging abu- »
ſiue wickednes in after ages: by the one muſt *Ka-* »
lucki remit the compoſition, as vnreaſonable, by »
the other *Mengrelius* maintaine it, as prodigious, »

This was ſo well liked of *Arcabella*, that preſent ioy chaſed away the enemies to health, griefe and diſpaire, making way to cheerefulnes, with whoſe helpe beautie appeared in more liuely colours, and ſo ſhee haſted to the *Emperour*, whom finding at leiſure, or cauſing other affayres to tarry her leiſure (after ſome debating of the matter) ſhe con- » firmed to her opinion: yet for a while ſhe was vn- » anſwered by his muſing on the ſucceſſe: reſem- » bling a man ready to taſte of an inchanted Cuppe, » whoſe propertie by ſhedding or ſauing the drinke » warranteth a chaſte or diſſolute wife: and reaſo- » ning thus, what do I now attempt; If ſhe be found » conſtant, it is no leſſe than I expect; If inconti- » nent, it is that I would not know; without doubt I will therefore make no ſuch triall: but in this point *Mengrelius* kept not correſpondencie. For though he impugned the iourney by many arguments, yet at the laſt he promiſed *Arcabella* to go in perſon, and ſealing the couenant with an amorous kiſſe diſmiſſed her, to entertaine a greater delight, and applyed himſelfe to the conuenient diſpatch of the Progreſſe.

Stay a while (my *Egerius*, quoth the Duke) and let vs be reſolued, what aduenture hath enforced this

this hurliburly in the Cittie: With that they might heare the Alarum-bell of the Hauen ring out, and a Messenger discouered King *Zalbys* approch, whom a strange accident had drawne downe into the nether *Comagena*; the dispatch whereof and neerenesse to the place where the Duke his Nephew was reziant, gaue libertie to a motion of kindnesse to put it selfe it practise, and thus occasioned his accesse to *Fortona*.

The hystorie of Xantippus and Encelidon.

IN the setled time of King *Zalbys* gouernment, the neither *Comagena* was famous for the Riuer *Gozaxs*, playing the wanton betwixt the Pallaces of the Lords *Cusanach* and *Soltimos*, which as you see a Messenger bring glad tydings to one, and so returne to another, ran through a pleasant valley to *Cusanach*, and backe againe to *Soltimos*; proportioning both the sides of a *Peninsule*, with a current of 15. Leagues. For first, it went forward with iollitie to the East, and then (as if it had beene proud of some good Newes) with a stately compasse (least too short turning might hinder his good speed) whirled backe againe to the West; and by often recourses at last acquainted the inhabitants with the birth of two sonnes: two sons famous to the world for Natures first life; famous in the world for liues strange loue; famous from the world for loues vnmatchable continuance, which made death stomach the indissolution: For as the worke finished in them both shewed

but

but one perſon in both, though parted in motion: ſo the mindes of both grew with their bodies to a *Sunpathy*, and reſembled ſweet muſicke made by the well tuning the ſtrings, onely their names accorded to this difference, that *Cuſanach* taught *Xantippus* the dutie of a ſonne, and *Soltimos* ſhewed *Encelidon* the affection of a father: and ſurely how euer greatneſſe breedeth many times contempt, the ſecret enemy of conuerſation, and abſolute hinderer of former amitie: yet heere did the fathers liue without grudging, and the ſonnes proportion their affections accordingly; as not debarred by the diſtance of their dwellings from counter-changeable meetings, and inſeperable familiaritie, in eating, lying, liuing, and louing together; keeping time in their actions, as if they had determined to conclude ſome woonder of friendſhip in the world, and indeed appeared like Twinne-brothers of one mother; both in habite, faſhion, demeanour, and what circumſtances ſoeuer may make any thing like another: yea, it grew to that rare and admirable effect, that when *Xantippus* had with ſtrange conflicts reſiſted his paſſion, leaſt the loue of *Eucaſta*, beautious *Eucaſta*, and in being beloued of *Xantippus* fortunate *Eucaſta*, ſhould deuide the loue of his friend, he yet continued the ſame *Xantippus*, and would not permit *Encelidon* to depart from *Xantippus*, nor could indeede *Encelidon* digeſt any thing, but what liked *Xantippus*.

AT laſt Fortune deſpighted to behold ſuch a mirrour of immutability, bribed the ſonne of *Venus*, (as the Poets vſe to ſing) to ſow the ſeedes of Diuiſion; which how euer they rooted, were ſprinkled in *Encelidons* heart, and began to ſpring forward, as ſweetned with the graces of *Eucaſta*, which like the tranſlucent beames of ſome fayre Planet, ſhewed tokens of admiration, rather then knowledge: ſo that *Encelidon* could not but loue *Eucaſta*, *Eucaſta* could not but like *Encelidon*, becauſe hee was like *Xantippus*, and *Xantippus* loued *Eucaſta* the better for liking *Encelidon*; till the controuerſie grew betwixt a paſsion ouerruling Reaſon, and true Friendſhip ouermaſtring Idle humors: But when *Encelidon* perceiued no way of comfort, but by beeing a traytor to *Zantippus*, friendſhip preuayled, and hee choſe rather to die, then to be found diſloyall; ſo that after many circumſtances of diſcontentment, hee would haue killed himſelfe, had not the working of his ſpirit compelled the tongue to intreat Death not to be too too cruell; by which occaſion with the fortune of ouerlooking his demeanor, *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the errour of *Encelidon*, and *Encelidons* diſtraction expoſed both feare and trouble: yet the admirable innated loue expelled the comberſome enemies of his quiet. Ieloſie and Miſtruſt, and by way of kindneſſe, hee expoſtulated with *Encelidon* the cauſe of his griefe, diſtemperature, and now deſperate

rate attempt: But as you ſee a guiltie man diſcon-
folate with the iudgement of Conſcience and
Law concluding his finall end: ſo ſtood *Encelidon*
hauing nothing to anſwere, but amazing lookes,
and a deiected countenance, wherein *Xantippus*
might read the miſchiefe pretended, and by his
abaſhed vnwillingneſſe to reueale, found (and at
laſt compelled him ſo to confeſſe) the firſt diſcoue-
rie to be true.

Encelidon had no ſooner curſed the day of his Birth, Fortune, Loue, Heauen, Earth, and Hell, that thus had tonſpired againſt his Fayth; but faynted with remorce, and as if he would plead the defect of Nature, not Malice, fell downe in *Xantippus* armes, and bade him not ſpare to ridd the world of ſuch a wretch. But hee in a ſtrange contrarietie comforted him with preuention, and that there was nothing remedileſſe; yea coniured him by all the names of life, manhood, ſetled loue, inſeperable contracts, and what elſe a ſweete oratory might inferre, to rayſe vp his ſpirits; and if need were, not to deſiſt: For although his infamy and diſhonor muſt leaue a ſcandall to *Xantippus* in his partialitie; yet what would hee not doe to ſaue the life of *Encelidon*: Cheare thy ſelfe therefore, and onely change the name of *Encelidon*, and *Eucaſta* can know no other, but that thou art *Xantippus*: For *Xantippus* onely can diſcouer, who is *Encelidon*. Bee not diſmayde, I priſe thee at a great rate; and rather then *Encelidon* ſhould miſcarry, *Xantippus*

will be without *Eucaſta*. Heere grew the contention betweene them to ſome vnpleaſant particulars; the one pleading for Death, the other ſcorning euery thing but his Friends life: At laſt perſwaſion, ſome reaſons, and *Xantippus* enforcement, compelled him to take the name of *Xantippus* vpon him, and ſo the loue of *Eucaſta* ouercame his feare, and brought him to reape the Harueſt of his ſtrange deſires. But when Loue came to floriſh his Colours, (Oh pardon the fortune and errour of Paſsion) how could thoſe beauties appeare? How could thoſe ſweet embracements continue? How could that euer burning impreſsion remaine in ſtilneſſe, and hee not be thankefull to ſucceſſe for the ſame? Yet fly Friendſhip from ſight of this treaſon. For *Encelidon* like a man rauiſht fell ſenſeleſſe in the armes of *Eucaſta*, and *Eucaſta* confounded at *Xantippus* extaſie, ſtriued to helpe, and helped when ſhee knew how, though ſhee little knew whom; till at laſt (as no extremitie can laſt) *Encelidon* recouered ſome life, & with paſsionate teares ſhewed tokens both of trembling feare, and enraging deſire: but pittifull *Eucaſta* wretched in the ignorance of her *Xantippus* diſtemperature, accompanied him with a ſadder weeping. Now when *Encelidon* ſaw to what ſtraights hee had driuen his Barke, and that the delight of his ſoule was diſquieted with the errour, all impatient hee diſcouered hee was *Encelidon*, and not *Xantippus*; leauing out no circumſtance, which either might reueale his loue,

loue, or publiſh the glory of his Friend, beſeeching her to loue him nere the worſe for taking this courſe in her loue; nor *Xantippus* the leſſe for louing his friend; nor her ſelfe for being beloued of *Encelidon*, who had once made choyce of death, had not the loue of *Eucaſta* perſwaded life, and *Xantippus* commanded, that *Encelidon* ſhould liue. But alas, *Eucaſta* durſt not truſt her owne ſences; ſhe heard the voyce of *Xantippus*, ſhe ſaw the ſhape of *Xantippus*, ſhe felt the motions of *Xantippus*; onely he ſware he was *Encelidon*. Some times ſhe feared a pollicy to try her weakneſſe: ſome times her feare accompanied with Ieloſie, that *Xantippus* miſtruſted her Conſtancie: ſome times a pretty kind of anger ſware to *Xantippus*, this was too great vnkindneſſe: ſome times ſhee entreated him to deſiſt from this circumuention: and at laſt on her knees coniured him by the ſecrets of her loue, to loue his *Eucaſta*, to bee her *Xantippus*, and ſuffer *Eucaſta* to bee nones, but *Xantippus*: till *Encelidon* added the oaths of the ſunne, and by other circomſtances of more particularitie brought her to the right path of vnderſtanding, that ſhee was reſolued it, was *Encelidon*. This awhile her patience forbare to ſtomach, and loue to her Husband forbade to diſcouer: But as when you ſee the Fire put out by ſuppoſing the Aſhes to couer and hide the ſame, and yet the next day ſome Sparkes of life are remayning by

« by remooving their Veyle. So fared it with *Eu-*
« *caſta*, ſhee wiſely raked in her Diſcontent with the
« coldeſt Embers ſhee could, till Misfortune brought
« her to toſſe them abroad, and then appeared, that
the fire was not quite extinguiſhed; that her con-
ceite was not altogeather eaſed, but ſtomaching
more and more to be ſo betrayed, ſhee acquainted
her mother *Iugeroth* with the Hiſtory from the
beginning: A woman of that working ſpirit, that
if the Country had affoorded meanes of ſetting
Ambition on worke, ſhee would haue ſcorned the
name of a Subiect: A woman ſo imperious in her
will, that no action was vnattempted, nor after
the attempt vndetermined, which might add wings
to her deſires, though ſometimes they tended to
laſciuiouſneſſe: A woman of that implacabillity,
that once ſubiect to the error of miſlike, before ſhe
would admitte of remiiſsion, ſhe dared diſcouer
an abſolute mallice: A woman of that apprehenti-
on, that the leaſt abuſe was an indignity to her
houſe, & then followed a proſecution of reuenge:
This appeared in the diſcourſe of the fearefull *Eu-*
caſta; the memory whereof ſtroke ſuch impreſ-
ſion, that the impatient *Iugeroth* without care of
Conſcience in plaine tearmes vrged the Murder
of *Xantippus*, and to be effected by the hand of *En-*
celidon: nor deſiſted ſhee from reaſon and argu-
ment, as the breach of Honour, the hate of her Huſ-
band, continuall heart-burning, ſecret miſlikes, the
diſcouery abroad, and the renowne of the reuenge,

as

as if becauſe the body was diſtempered through the paine of the Head, no other remedy ſerued, but to bereaue it of his capitall member without further ſearch of redreſſe.

To this was *Encaſta* ſoone perſwaded, as ſuppoſing her honour and renowne ecclipſed, yea broken in pieces, and ſo ſuffered her loue to receiue the ſame foile: beſides (as it were inforcered, with her mothers deuilliſh Impoſtures) ſhee was the leſſe carefull of her duety, & therfore dared to reaſon with *Encelidon* to the ſame purpoſe; yea ſome-times to *Xantippus* inſtead of *Encelidon*: For but by their names ſhe neuer could know one frō an other, who ſeemed to diuert her from ſuch immanitie enforcing ſome arguments, though to little purpoſe, whereby if the feare had continued, hee might indeed haue ſuſpected his friend, but the worſt part of ſuch a conceit was quickly cut off by the haſty (and peraduenture vnlook't for) comming of *Encelidon*; who once againe proſtrated his open breaſt to *Xantippus*, and bade him not ſpare to rid the world of ſuch a recreant traytor, whoſe wauering loialtie was ſubiect to ſo many temptations; with that hee went on in the ſtrange diſcourſe of his murther concluded by his wife and her mother; which with many proteſtations he diſclaimed, and proceeded ſo farre, that after *Xantippus* had denyed to entertaine the leaſt thought of ſuſpition againſt him, he ſtabbed himſelfe in many places, till preuented from the full effect

fect of his furie, *Xantippus* was enforced to a new courſe; at laſt his helpe brought recouery and encouragement ſeemed a reconciliation to the eternall ſtrengthening the bond of friendſhip But *Eucaſta* all impatient at *Encelidons* ſlacknes, and more then perſwaded, how *Xantippus* was made acquainted with the fault, preſently fledde to *Maſtricot*, whereafter a pithy intimation of her diſgraces, & the wrongs offered her fathers honſe (to which her mother added forceable reaſons) ſhee raiſed a ſtrong partie, and determined to repaire by force of Armes, what her ſlender policie (as ſhe tearmed it) had almoſt ruined: ſo that *Xantippus* was compelled to ſtand on his gaurd, and (when he perceiued, how he which only lyeth at defence helpeth himſelfe but a little with defence) after to make an offenſiue war. To this *Encelidon*, and the houſe of *Soltimos* was auxiliary, and the two friends gloried in their conſtancie, and cared not who ſtomaked the ſucceſſe of their buſineſſe: till at laſt the many ſlaughters and diſtractions of the Prouinces pleaded for redreſſe; and king *Zalby* was compelled in perſon to come into *Comagena*, to limit or reſtraine theſe miſchiefes: yet wrought his preſence no other attonement, but the ſurceance of the warre. For *Eucaſta* (or *Iugeroth* in her daughters behalfe) would not hearken after any reconciliation; and *Xantippus* denied to be diuided from *Encelidon*, becauſe *Encelidon* concluded neuer to be ſeperated from *Xantippus*

This

THis was the occaſion of king *Zalbys* comming to *Fortona*, at ſuch time as *Egerius* related the Hiſtorie of *Mengrelius*, whereupon they all diſſiſted from the worke in hand to attend the Duke who made it a matter of reſpect and ſpecialitie to remember the Kings worth, as being his Vncle in blood, and father for directions and corroboration in his eſtate; whereupon the Officers of his Houſhold omitted nothing, which belonged to the ſtate of his perſon, & the dignity of the preſent Court. Thus is King *Zalby* feaſted, and much ſatisfied to be ſo magnificently feaſted: thus is the Duke eſtabliſhed in the ſtrengthening amitie of ſuch a mightie Prince: thus is *Deltona* cheered, that no action of *Rugios* ouer-paſſed the limmits of moderation: But thus is *Montanus* perplexed, as confounding deſire & diſtruſt together: at laſt the Duke imparted to the King all the circumſtances of his loue & Rape; of *Deltonas* demeanor & contempt; of *Egerius* complaint & diſcourſes which the King (becauſe he had bin long ſince curſorily made acquainted with *Kaluckies* baniſhment, & *Mengrelius* aduancement) deſired to heare at large: Like a man taſting on delicates, who more longeth to fill his ſtomach after the proofe of the ſweetnes, then before: whereupon the Duke ſoon conferred with his ſonne *Philano* concerning the matter, who as ſoone certified *Egerius* of the Kings pleaſure, who as ſoone conſented to obey the pleaſure, and diſpatch the matter, wherein he thus proceeded.

King Zalby commeth to Duke Rugio to Fortona.

Engerius prosecuteth the Historie of Mengrelius.

THe great Eye of heauen (*most mighty Princes*) had not fully viewed all the parts of the earth, nor time chased with such swiftnesse the course of the yeere: but that the fruitfull *Arcabella* once againe gaue notice of her pregnancie, and signified to the world, she was borne to be a mother, what Disaster soeuer went about to disappoint her: which only hasted the *Emperors* iourney forward; who setting on worke all the parts of his thoughts made a hundred seuerall fashions of one piece. Sometimes with more quicknesse then good speed, running ouer all the course of former occurrents, with a certaine heart-breaking at his Brothers exile; but surfetting on that dish, hee loathed the dyet, and choaked himselfe with the delight of principalitie; next hee remembred the contract, whereof the very terrour made him abashed to thinke, in what madnesse it was ratified then, and with what remorce repented now: anon hee conceited how his subiects were affected, if either the murther of his children should continue, or the breach of such inhumane couenants be attempted; afterward hee reasoned, why *Arcabella* importuned this trauell; and last of all, whether the sentence should be reputed Canonicall: But the feare of that diffidence extinguished at the first puffe the flame, and yet gaue light to goe forward in the other path; as if there were as much necessitie to propitiate *Apollos* displeasure, as to determine his owne affaires:

affaires: whereupon hee ſent out Commiſsions, for the artificiall houſing the Sea; and defenſiue furniſhing and rigging his Nauy; in which the benefit of a Sun-ſhining morning (nothing then practiſed but honourable neceſsitie) without further delay embarked him, and time (not much intermingled with ſtrange occurrents) brought him at laſt to ſafe harbour.

Thus prooued this Voyage proſperous at Sea, and was not altogeather ominous at Land, becauſe *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* truly aduertiſed of the Emperours comming, and the cauſe, found it a matter of ſmall ſuſpition, and therefore made an honourable Welcome, a forward Spring of his owne greatneſſe, and a very life of *Mengrelius* hope: But when his brother *Miſocrapus* and *Apollos* Prieſt had returned anſwere, hee would attend the Emperour at *Delphos*, not doubting of auſpicious ſucceſſe, hee ſeemed rauiſhed with glad reſſe; and in that poynt of extremitie onely affoorded occaſion of ſuſpition, as when we ſee a ſodaine Storme immediatly ſucceed a glorious Heate: yet durſt no man make ſuch interpretation, becauſe the Art of Deuining was peculiar to the Prieſtes. So the Emperour went forwatd, and had *Scalitorax* company to the Towne; where he found the reuerent *Miſocrapus* ready for his conduct to the Oracle.

The description of Delphos.

THis *Delphos* had the report of others illustred, and the rareneſſe of it ſelfe made admirable: in reſpect the place was ſupported by the euerflouriſhing *Pernaſſus*, which ſeemed glad to be the foundation of the Building; but ten times glad, that it reſembled ſome Bulwarke to ſecure a treſurie; and yet it appeared more beholding to Nature then Art: For the craggineſſe of the Hill reſembled a very net of Rockes, as if the Stone and Earth were layde countercompony togeather: next the paſſable wayes were ſo many, and hemmed to croſſe turnings meeting one another, that it made a confuſed Laborinth. Laſtly, the entries into mighty Caues, repreſented ſo many Dores of the houſe of Darkneſſe; and by the many changes of Lightnings, Thunders, caſting vp of Stones, Sulphur, flaſhings, filthy ſtenches, and ſuffocating Dampes, ſeemed the very entries of Hell; which *Xerxes* made proofe of by looſing fourethouſand men in going about ro robbe the Treaſure, and *Brennus* Duke of *Gallia* experimented, when hee proſecuted the like theft: Contrariwiſe, all peaceworking gentleneſſe, and ſence-pleaſing ſweetnes welcommed the neceſſarie commers, and liberall Beneſactors.

On the topp of this Mountaine was the Oracle erected; a place beautified with the coſt of Kings, & venerated by the acceſſe of chiefeſt Monarches: for therein none might enter, but eſpeciall Prieſts, religious Princes, and ſtrange Embaſſadours.

Concer

Concerning the Monument it ſelfe, Fame confirmed it a Temple vnmatchable; and Time deſigned it the Pallace of *Apollo*, allowed both for an honorable dwelling, and a conſecrated Sanctuarie: the ſubſtaunce whereof it was compounded, made ſhew of a coſtly Marble, and the forme it retayned, ſeemed a ſpatious Goodlineſſe, ſtaying the eyes of the beholders with varietie of obiect; wherein the Workemen had ſo played their partes, as if indeed they had determined to make their memories immortall. For *Agamedes* and *Trophonius* the ſuppoſed Artificers, are for this cauſe, made famous: It was well Leaded on the top, ſtrongly bard with Iron, vnuſually windowed with Iaſpar, mightily vnderpropt with Pillars, ſubſtancially roofed with Cedar, ſurely lockt to keepe their Treaſure, and cunningly encloſed for obſcuring their Secrets: the inſide allowing more daintineſſe, then the outſide goodlineſſe; and both vnited to be a ſcence-rauiſhing Miracle: and the trouble to others aroſe from conceite, rather how it was finiſhed, then in the labour to them, which concluded it. Round about were Trees planted, in which did alwaies Oyle burne; Houſes eſtabliſhed to lodge the companie, and Veſtries appoynted for the ornaments of the Sacrifice. At the Doore ſtoode an Idoll, which they did kiſſe: a hollow Truncke, in which they did offer, and a Lauatorie to waſh in. Within hunge a ſiluer Bell to be rung, ſtoode a perfumed

Lampe to be ſtird, and a golden Altar ſupporting a maſsie Image, before whom they muſt kneele.

The Prieſtes were the firſt which apparrelled themſelues, opened the doores, ſweetned the roomes, bedecked the Tables, brought out the Relicks, hung the walles, furniſhed the pillars, ſpread abroad coſtly Carpets, ſet out their Iewels, trimmed the cup-boards, and entertained the Embaſſadors. After them other Officers and Attendants were to celebrate a tryumph; and laſt of all, the parties approached to receiue their anſweres, which were ſometimes diffuſed & obſcure, ſometimes amaiguous or *Amphibologies*; ſometime briefe and very peremptorie; ſometime true, certaine, and enlarged.

Now is the *Emperor* magnificently entreated, and orderly inſtructed; whereupon hee lodgeth his Retinew, watcheth his Nights, ſhaueth his haire, apparelleth his body, approacheth the Temple, waſheth his hands, offereth his preſents, kiſſeth the Idole, knolleth the Bell, ſturreth the Incenſe, alloweth the Orizons, beginneth his Sacrifice, ſtandeth his Circles, and marketh the coniuration; which began with terrors and darkneſſe, vntill two burning Tapers ſuddenly flaming by the naked ſide of the Image, diſcouered the wonders of the Chappell, and made him attentiue to heare the vnliuing maſsineſſe diuulge the pleaſure of the Gods. This finiſhed, the reuerent *Miſocrapus* (in his Prieſtly habite) drew the lately

trauers

trauers before the Altar, and with a ſadde demeanour preſented himſelfe to *Mengrelius* more ſadder, kneeling vpon the ground, til the holy Prieſt faſtned an enameled Tablet, to a twiſted ſtring of blacke ſilke and gold, putting it ouer his head next his bodie, and departed awhile with a ſilent bleſſing, leauing the *Emperor* to the diſpatch of the Ceremonie, but the Attendants of the Pallace, brought *Mengrelius* ſolemly foorth to his companie, who as ſolemly welcommed him, and ſo they tooke leaue of *Miſocrapus*, & returned to the Citie of *Delphos*, where *Scalitorax* King of *Phocis* expected his aduenture.

By this time either feare or furie haſtned his departure to his ſhips, wherein he quickly diſpoſed himſelfe, and without other interception, then the tediouſneſſe of the iourney, came in ſafetie to *Trebizonda*, where each one imparted the manner of the Voyage, and made this diuiſion of their diſcourſes; ſome amplified the deſcription of the places ſeene; others the diſcouery of the wonders heard: ſome tooke occaſion from thoſe changes the Sea afforded; others made remonſtrance of what each countrey maintained: ſome ouer-paſsing what was impertinent, diſputed of the hill, and the Oracle; others more curious intermedled with the Sacrifice and the Orders, which not admitted to behold, they were therefore more deſirous to vnderſtand: ſome preſumed to aske how the *Emperor* was pleaſed, and others dared to enquire,

whether

whether the Common wealth should be disordered: but the fearefull *Mengrelius* made his accesse to the Court, an astonishment to his Nobles, and a heauie welcome to *Arcabella*; they sorrowing his answere was frownes: and she trembling his salutation was a command out of presence, who accustomed to no other disposition then obedience: displeasingly dutifull accorded to the hard doome, and loutingly impatient effected his will.

But vnkindnesse had not thus her period: For *Mengrelius* finding the Oracle to threaten his destruction, in the Beleefe grewe so impatient, that the promises of comfort, and sweetnesse of counsell seemed irksome, scarse abiding to heare of redresse, and absolutely denying to discouer the reason: resembling him, whom crueltie bereaued "of his principall member the tongue, because hee "had nothing to talke of but wofull bookes, nor any "thing to discouer, but soone mooued displeasure, which astonished the beholders, who yet desisted not to pacifie his trouble, and beguile his passion: but he despighted to see any inclination to delight, and perceiuing his actions were so generally marked, retiered himselfe, and was only humorons in the worst part of melancholy: at last the extremitie draue him cleane out of doores, and made him eccho in the fields, what he durst not wisper in the Pallace.

O Gods (quoth hee) what auaileth life, if to liue be worse then death? What profiteth honour

when

when the ſhame of deiection ſhall extripate the glory of former credite? What benefite in a Crowne, when euery dramme of golde muſt bee ballanced againſt a hundred of cares? What preeminence in the title of dignitie? when confuſion ſhall make ridiculous dignitie, titles, and preeminence? O Fortune! O falſe Fortune! Well may we call thee blind, when thou ſtrikeſt thoſe who offered no wrong; and fawneſt on him, that deteſteth thy fauours. Well may we call thee vncon. ſtant; for if by chaunce a Morning manifeſt thy ſmiles, yet ſhall the ſame Euening detect thy malice. Well may we call thee deceitfull, ſeeing thy pleaſures are like the waters of *Alphaſtus*, ſweet to the pallat, but poiſon to the ſtomach. Well may wee call thee a tyrant, for thy hate is implacable, and thy reuenge inexorable. O Sun whoſe glorious beauty is the life of all creatures, & comfort of the earth; what comfort can I haue, that muſt bee depriued of thee dying, or deſpighted with thee liuing; and ſo hath my prognoſticated diſcomfort aſſured? O walkes of ſolitarineſſe, how agreeable onely are your ſhades to my paſſions, had your trees ſable barkes, and your boughs blacke leaues? For the heauens haue conſpired, the earth conſented, and hell it ſelfe concluded my deſtruction. Why then baſe Deities, iniurious Fortune, vnprofitable Sunne, and vncouth Deſerts; ſpare not your malice, and powre out the liquor of your deadlieſt poiſon: if not ſo? yet what

"terror intrudeth with ſuſpition: But witleſſe & im-
"patient: whether am I carried with theſe outrages;
"either there is truth or falſhood: if the firſt, what
"preuention? if the latter, why was any iorney? yet
"ſhall I be ſo childiſh to ſhrinke vnder this feare; as
"though each paltry ceremony were the armes of
"Religion, or cooſening deuice of Prieſtes a coun-
"termaunding of the actions of Kings? tuſh; I will
"not ſubmit to ſuch mockery, nor ſuffer my ſelfe to
"be the ſtall of deriſion. No, no; before I conſent to
"be ſo ſottiſhly baffled: Murder, Fury, & Contempt
of all Women ſhall reuenge my diſtemprature.

In this mood he haſted toward the Pallace, but the inſtant violence of his Reſolution was thus ſtangely rebated: Eare the tract of the groue had fully conduced him to the end, a ſodden ſtorme intercepted further haſtineſſe, and compelled his retreat to a place of ſhellter: now; whether the nature of the tempeſt effectuated drowſineſſe; or his ſpirites weried with meditation deſired reſt: or the very braine dryed with ſorrow ſhruncke vp the ſtringes of his eyelidders; or him ſelfe was willing to this courſe to ouerpaſſe his feare; he quietly fell a ſleepe, had not his ſleepe the more diſquieted him, like a man reparinga ruinous houſe, and pulling downe aparte haleth alſo the whole to his greater charge: For a formidable dreame thus ſurpriſed his repoſe. An Eagle mounting to her neſt had onely too young ones to feed, but whether ſhe conceiued vnkindneſſe againſt them or in the

Mengrelius troubled with a Dreame.

the misfortune of her ruin brought not wherewithall to succour them; or displeased at some other accident, shee threwe them to the ground, leauing, her selfe childlesse, and them liueleſſe: yet they recouered, and miraculously gathering new life, and extraordinary stature returned, ere their mother had made a second flight; seeming by their demeanour as though they come to comfort her: but shee stomacking the curtesie, conuerted her loue to rage, and began a manner of contention against them; they seeing the danger desisted awhile, till very necessitie of life draue them to offence; and offence increasing with anger, anger forgat it selfe, and so betweene them the olde one was torne in pieces, which when a better consideration deliberated on, with a monstrous howling they departed: the noyse whereof awaked *Mengrelius*, so his Dreame ended, and the tempest ended, but a worse dismay began then before.

At last remembring himself, he hasted to a priuate Posterne of the pallace, where finding the appointed Comptrollor of his house, hee with him imparted such secrets, that as the charge was of importance, his dispatch was with speedinesse. For he presently returned with sadnesse from the *Empresse*, and trouble from the Court; shee submitting to his appointment, and they appointing that nights libertie, if it pleased him to visite her; whereupon he hasted vp, and dismissing all from his presence, conferred onely with his mother a-

bout ſtrange things and tolde his ſiſter *Piſana* his cruell reſolution; wherein the ſuſpition was ſo terrible, that forgetting the weakeneſſe of his *Empreſſe*, hee left them and thus aſtoniſhed the helpwanting Princeſſe: with a ſoule-vexing preamble:

„ Vnfortunate *Arcabella*, not in that thou art the
„ daughter of *Samarchanus*, but wife of *Mengre-*
„ *lus*: vnderſtand by me; that I am accurſed for my
„ owne ſake, and thou art caſt with the ſame verdict
„ for my ſake, as being the inſtrumentall cauſe of
„ vnhappineſſe: the Oracle confirming thee a mo-
„ ther of ſtrange Iſſue, pronouncing my deiection
„ by my ſonne, death by my daughters husband,
„ and confuſion, if I infringe the oth to *Kalucki*; not
imagine I am caried away with ſuppoſes: For what I haue rufully reported, thou mayeſt pittifully ouer-looke, with that he ſhewed them *Miſocrapus* Tablet, and they read the Propheſie thus inſculped.

Apollos doome will not the King delude,
Yet breatheth terrour, vengeance, and deſpight;
A male, and female ſhall one birth conclude
By Princely meanes obſcured from thy ſight.

The ſonne ſhall liue, how euer rage conſpire
To cut the threed our Deſtinies *haue ſpun,*
And in thy life againſt his owne deſire
Poſſeſſe the Throne, which Samarchanus *wonne.*

The daughters Loue a Shepheard ſhall obtaine
By ſtrange aduenture vndiſparaged,
And he muſt end thy peace, life, Kingdoms raigne,
When Trebizonda *ſhall be foraged.*

Beleeue, or not; all's one: I yet conclude,
Apolles *doom will not the King delude.*

This they read, and to this was ſome reply in redineſſe, but *Mengrelius* interpoſed this breuitie; that my former Oath may therefore bee kept inuiolate, and my vexed ſpirits from ſorer out-rage reſtained, I command (what euer vnreaſonableneſſe ſeeme in the command) that as ſoone as Nature hath brought thy children into the light, thy own hands depriue them of the light; this ſee thou regard to performe, and performe as thou regardeſt thy life; but *Arcabella* permitted not the freedom of this bitterneſſe, for ſhe thus aduentured to repell it.

What inhumane cruelty is heere threatned, " and vnmanly proſecutions deuiſed; nothing but " inordinate paſsions, diſtempered behauiour, bro- " ken ſleeps, fearefull out-cries, inconſiderate vows, " and vnnaturall tyranies? Neere tell mee of vn- " princely proteſtations, better reſolue to tranſ- " greſſe enforced contracts, which ſatisfaction may " counteruaile; then continue in ſettled wickedneſſe " which repentance cannot mitigate? better ſubmit " to inſcrutable mercie, whoſe goodneſſe euer ex- " ceedeth formidable appearance, then execute ma- "

« licious wilfulneſſe, whoſe out-rages are ſeldome
« preuented? What Law, Iudgement, or Reaſon
« wil allow, condemne, diſappoint? The maſſacre
« of innocent Babes; the Preuiledge of ſacred Prin-
« ces; the right of Legitimate Heires. But to the
« purpoſe; hath heauenly reuolution threatned an
« ouerthrow? What earthly meanes can prohibite
« the pleaſure of the Gods; hath our feare taken
« roote from the Oracle of *Apollo*? What humane
« cunning ſhall hinder the courſe of their ſpringing?
« Yet peraduenture you haue miſtaken: what was
« propheſied, or propheſied what your ſelfe haue
« miſtaken: beſides each fond Dreame muſt not be
« beleeued, or lying Prieſt allowed; as for deuine re-
« ſolutions, neither can the reaching wit of man im-
« peach the credite, nor Furie of deuils controule the
« enforcement. By the paines therefore of *Baſutaſa* in
« our birth I deſire; by the teares & ſadnes of *Piſana*
« by my owne chaſtitie; by thy aduancement to this
« Empire; by the ſecrets of our marriage I coniure;
« either your patience to tollerate the burden of
« heauenly Impoſition, or reſuſcitate your allacritie
« to recouer your renowne: by the one you ſhall be
« ſure to proceed in a good courſe; by the other
« confir me the faith of your ſubiects toward you;
« who ſetled ſo long in a happy peace, & confirmed
« in the Loue of a Royall Prince, wil neither hazerd
« the one, nor leaue the other, though *Kalucky*
« ſhould immagine there were cauſe of innouation.
« But what was this, otherwiſe, then to ſpit againſt

the winde, whose violence returneth the filth into thy face, or to impart the sweetnesse of musick to a deafe auditorie. For hee either not hearing, becauſe he minded it not; or not minding, becauſe it liked not: or not liking, becauſe it pleaſed not; or not pleaſing, becauſe it diſagreed to his humorous ſuſpition, anſwered; My will ſhall now ſtand for a Lawe, and pronounceth death to thy children; or loſſe of thy owne life; with which concluſion of death departing, as the beginning was death, the proceeding death, and the ende death, ſo no doubt had it finiſhed with a double death, if prouident carefulneſſe had not preuented deſperate quickneſſe. For the Empreſſe all intraged, put in practiſe diuers motions of a broken ſpirit; as raſhing of her ornaments of Maieſtie; ſcratching her louely face with a maniſeſt rebellion againſt beautie, diſſeuering her daintie plighted treſſes in ſcorn of comelineſſe, and bethumping her panting ſides ſwelling with the life ſtriuing within; ſo that the Ladyes had a taxe of difficultie impoſed to withhold her from a deſperate crueltie, til a new worke propoſed it ſelfe: for her ſpirites weakened with the threanes of her pangs; and her pangs increaſing with child-bearing trauell, ſubiected her to neceſſitie of life, and induced them to further her deliuerance, which was done in ſuch reuerent manner, and womanly order, that the ſecret was ſecret to themſelues, and the hurliburly conſiſted in the action, which buſied, and not in the parly, which troubled them.

Thus

The Empresse is deliuered of two children, the one named Trezoboro, the woman Brizaca.

THus may the next Morning send fame abroad to declare the hazard of *Arabella* her selfe, and the birth of two Princes; who though they seemed marked for the court of life, yet durst they not but appoint them to the house of death; allowing onely this fauour, to name them before they went that their entertainment might bee like *Empresse* children; so the man was called *Trezoboro*, and the woman *Brizaca*, and thus began their Tragedie.

No sooner had the carefull *Ballutasa* clogged the mothers armes with so precious a burden, but shee affoorded them ghastly lookes and sore outcries, the children smiling but newe borne, and laughing the faster for her threatning the greater; which had shee warily marked (though the dangerous choise caused the preferment of her owne life, whereby shee demaunded the instrument of of death) yet surely would the heart neuer haue consented to so pittilesse an action, nor the tongue so quickly expressed the consent of the heart. For in dimnesse of sight (teares still hindring the fulnes of seeing) beholding how pleasure and delight made reziance in their countenance, shee forgate either to doe or to speake; and proceeding further, burst foorth into abrupt speeches, threatning to kil her selfe with them. But the mother fore-seeing the inconueniences of a troubled spirit, by policie wrested the knife from her handes, and by force tooke

tooke the children out of her armes, imploying another in that butcherly office, who had charge to haſt with diligence, and diſpatch with ſecrecie.

The Ladie daring not denie, what yet ſhe durſt not compliſh, had libertie (teares and kneeling procuring this libertie) to depart out of ſight, and ſo retired her ſelfe into ſome obſcure corners miſtruſting the light would haue made her aſhamed to murther infants: but heere a conſcience not to doe amiſſe, ouer-wrought with a ſudden timerouſneſſe, that the heart repented, and the hands could not: Then ſhe tryed a place where ſhee might ſee what ſhe did; but now their ſmiles cauſed ſo many teares, that ſhee was neither able to abide them laughing, or her owne ſelfe trembling: Once againe ſhe poſted to the corner of a Groue, but here a ſudden quaking turned the ſharpned edge to her owne heart, as ſhee profered her hand to their throat: At laſt remembring the penaltie, ſhee concluded her owne life dearer then all the Princes in the worlds ſo that growing halfe angry, ſhe tooke againe the knife, and more ſtoutly went forward; yet proffering a ſtroake roared out-right, fainting for feare, and fearing euer after ſo to preſume: thus as ſhe went ſhee returned, proſtrating her ſelfe both before the mother, and the mothers mother, deſiring to abide a thouſand torments, rather then imagine a thought amiſſe againſt them; ſo that a new courſe of immolation muſt be taken in hand, or ſome ſtrange deuiſe of concealement put in pra-

ctiſe; whereupon the y reaſoned among themſelues on the ſame of the action, the charitie of the deed, and the honour of the attempt: nor left they out the difficultie of the enterpriſe, the penaltie of infringing the Emperors pleaſure, the way to preuent the greateſt miſchiefe, which was the acceſſe to ſee them murdered, nor the recompence, which time might recouer, if the Princes ſhould be preſerued: ſo that *Ballutaſa* made *Arcabella* ſtrengthen her ſelfe with the returned ſpectacle, taught *Arcabella* meanes to bee patient; and patience in her anguiſh, told *Arcabella*, *Trezoboro* and *Brizaca* ſhould liue, and reioyced with *Arcabella*, for that *Gellida* and *Perinthum* vndertooke the matter.

How Gellida and Perinthum ſaued the Princes.

THeſe were two daughters of the King of *Capadecia Opacus*, who kept his abode at the Citie of *Archelaies*, ſo famous for the circomferenciall Channell, which the Riuer *Halys* by winding it ſelfe about it doth make; and in a iollitie proude of the action, haſteth to the great *Euxinum* to boaſt of his paſſage. Now by reaſon hee was contributorie to the *Empire*, and had ſetled his brother *Cicotroxus* in the great Office of *Dianas* Prieſt-hood in *Taurica*, theſe Ladies from their Vncles priuiledge wrought the *Idea* of the childrens ſecuritie; and preſently poſted to *Cicotroxus*, to whom they diſcouered the whole proceſſe, the penaltie of the Law, the cruell determination of the Emperour,

and

and the ſhortneſſe of time, as being limited but fourteene dayes of returne: When the reuerent *Arch-Prieſt*, heard the diſcourſe, rather conceiuing well on the piety of his Neeces with their *Honorable* pollycie, then diſputing on feares or troubles depending, like a man priſing integritie before worldly reſpect, He confirmed the action, and thus briefly warranted likelyhood of ſucceſſe: Although (*Royall Ladyes*) as a man ſubiect to the weakneſſe of our firſt frailty, I might ſeeme amaſed with your ſtrange ſtory and paines taking: yet ſometime made acquainted with the like occurrents, and peraduenture matters of greater ſecret, though not of ſuch conſequence, I deſiſt from vnneceſſary queſtions, and thus giue light to your furtherance. *Dianas* ſacrifices are euery Moone celebrated the firſt day; and conſiſt of humane bloud from the Veines of young infants, wherwith we beſprinckle the altares and then conſume the bodies with fier, other ceremonies are infinite, and eaſier to be knowne by eye witneſſe then report, now by vertue of my authority will I proclame the neceſsitie of a new ſupply, out of which you ſhall chooſe a cupple a Male and Female, and with them depart to *Trebizond*, preſenting the *Empres* this ſigne of my affection, and duty. For if *Mengrelius* importune the murder, which he will quickly doe, then may theſe tollerate the cruelty, and you with the true *Princes* eſcape to *Capadocia*, if this pleaſe; detract no time

« but returne in peace: if not; to morrow is the day « of pacification, and you ſhall vnderſtand the plea- « ſure of the Goddeſſe:

But the *Ladies* quickly apprehended *Cicotroxus* deuice and thought it booteleſſe to make further tryall, therefore gratifying their Vncle they retur- « ned to the *Empreſſe*, as you ſee the friend of a faul- « tie ſubiect to ſome great *Prince*; who either con- « demneth to death or banniſhment: for ſhee remai- « ned all this while in diſcomforts and doubtes, be- cauſe whatſoeuer chanced, ſhe muſt be deprined of her Children; but by that time *Gellida* and *Pe- rinthum* had pacified with reaſon, and enforced argument of two inconueniences, to beare the leſ- ſer burden, ſhe cheared her ſelfe, and ſomewhat rayſing her body with a heart enforcing fearefull- neſſe, and teares compounded of ſorrow and glad- neſſe deliuered her Twinnes to the *Ladyes*; who re- ceiued them with a modeſt ſtilneſſe and departed accordingly, leauing the ſtrangers like ſilly lambes in a Butchery:

No ſooner were they thus diſmiſſed, but the *Emperor* (infringing the particulars of his owne ſtate) would needs viſit *Arcabella*, and in perſon behold the execution: For thus it chanced: ſince the time of his ſuſpition and fearefull Dreame, he was much conuerſant with *Belgorando* a magitian now counted in Court, but till this neceſsity neuer eſteemed, nor reputed worthy ſuch a title, had not fortune beene the Maiſter, and meere

hap

happ the Miniſter of his renowne, becauſe *Mengrelius* firſt acquainted him with the couenantes betweene *Kalucki* & himſelfe, & after with the viſion of the *Eagles*, which he enterpreted by himſelfe and his Children, wherin he ſo iumped with the *Emperors* ieloſie, and indeed ſeconded the Propheſie of the Oracle, (which was not as yet diſcouered to any body,) that he ſeemed to dote on his ſkill, and graced him with a Roabe of Purple, a Cape of Maintenance, and winged rod like *Mercuries Caduceus*: withall he commaunded the Court to honour him for his reſpect, ſo that his reputation accrewed from *Mengrelius*, will and he made his owne power the meanes to continue it; which he might the better do, becauſe the birth of the *Princes* chanced as was before intimated; beſides *Belgorando* (vnderhand acquainted with the *Empres* vnwillingneſſe to the murder, and flat deniall to be the executioner) he reuealed it to the *Emperor*, and wrought a further ampliation of his credite, by inferring the new diſcoueries, concerning his brother, and the warres likly to enſue, if the couenants betweene them weare infringed: Whereupon the *Emperor* ſeemed in a manner diſtracted conceiuing it would be ſo, and fearing it ſhould be ſo, as if indeed it weare ſo, and with the miſdoubt of he knew not what, rather raging then diſtempred hasted to *Arcabella*, threatning nothing but fier and ſword, if they once immagined to deceiue him: they againe exclaimed, as farre as they

durſt, & dared to execrate all incantations and deluding ſorceries: but neither exclamations nor execrations, nor the ſweete infants themſelues mollefied the hard harted *Emperor*. For he beheld the Maſſacre in perſon, leauing them to what pacification, they could procure; and returned himſealfe to ſee, who durſt find faulte:

By this time are *Gellida* and *Perinthum* welcomed into *Cappadocia*, as gratious to *Opacus* their father, and gratified by the ſubiects of the kingdome: yet concealing the ſecrets of their iorney they watched an opportunitie thus to diſpoſe of the *Princes*. *Coranus* & *Bertoſus* too brothers dwelling togeather in one houſe, and hauing maried *Dalie* and *Phemon*, too ſiſters not altogeather of Ignoble parents aſſured the world, that loue and good order can affright *Enuy* and *Contention*: For whether their delight one in another conuicted thoſe diſpleaſures, which paſſe betweene man and man, nothing was offenſiue, or if it were the offence neuer appeared, or whether the time affoorded no ſcope to the ambition of men, or peeuiſhneſſe amongſt women, the huſbandes carefully endeuored to looke to their buſineſſe, the wiues modeſtly agreed to content their huſbandes, and both like a well made bundell of ſweete ſmelling flowers, yeelded comfort to the ſence and life: To theſe (*moſt mighty King and Duke*) weare theſe *Princes* deliuered, and theſe (pointing to *Coranus* and *Bertoſus* indeed) be the men accountable for this reck-

The Empres Children deliuered to Coranus and Bertoſus, too Brothers in Capadocia:

ning

ning; ſo that if their Fortune be worth the diſcouering from their Infancie forward, no doubt by their diſcourſes the trueth will in more liuely colours appeare.

NOw by the plentious times of *Katabaſies* victories (quoth King *Zalby*) I am much ſatisfied in the redaction of this *Chaos*, becauſe till now Fame hath beene to ſparing of her ſecrets, and the report of the *Trebizondian* turmoiles was either denied the trueth, or augmented according to the diſpoſition of the author. For we knew that *Mengrelius* poſſeſſed the Diadem, and *Kalucki* meant to be beholding to his owne valour for another kingdome: whereunto (as if an heroicall preſumption had been the breath of ſome heauenly voyce) Fortune quickly lifted him vp, and gaue him the further *Tartarie* in reward of his paines, which firſt made him paſſage through my vpper *Comagena*, and after wrought his acceptation with the magnanimous *Mullumalla* the widow, *Empreſſe* of the late deceaſed *Barka*: ſo that by your fauour (Nephew *Rugio*) I wil gratulate *Egerius* for the participating this Noueltie; and entreat *Coranus* and *Bertoſus* (ſeeing we are ſo forward on our iourney) not to leaue vs, till we come to ſafe harbout. All this and more (anſwered the Duke) ſhal be but part of my dutie, yet doth the eyes of feare fore-ſee, that the end will be worſe then the beginning;

Montanus hearing the Hiſtorie of Mengrelius is much troubled when the Duke confeſſeth that he loueth Delto na

ning; and both beginning and ende vnite a croſneſſe againſt me. For *Egerius* himſelfe is diſpleaſed, *Bertoſus* dreadfull, and *Coranus* miſtruſteth my loue to *Deltona*.

„ But when *Montanus* heard the name of loue,
„ ſo ſadly pronounced, and the name of *Deltona*,
„ and the name of anothers loue to *Deltona* (like the
„ *Indian Odonta*, who by the hunters noyſe, is aſſured of trouble and diſquiet, and yet rowſeth himſelfe rather to prepare his courage to reſiſt, then by policie to eſcape) he ſtarted vp, and ſomewhat angerly (for his aſſociate furie was moderated)
„ ſpake to this purpoſe. Great Princes, as you ex-
„ pect dutie and alleageance from your ſubiects, ſo
„ muſt you be the authors of iuſtice and vertue in
„ your ſelues; els may you be feared for tyrants, and
„ hated for beeing feared; els may you incurre the
„ danger of repining, which at aduantage is ſubiect
„ to innouation, & wil queſtionleſſe ſubborne eue-
„ ry traiterous reuolt; els may yee awake a ſleeping
„ enemie, as ſometimes the priuate occaſions of one
„ Kingdome maketh partes-taking from another.
„ Let Honour then ouer-looke his *Index* for parti-
„ cular directions, and you maintaine goodneſſe for
„ the enlargement of renowne: as for the matter in
„ hand, a compulſiue loue is abſolute incontinencie,
„ and the diſſeiſing of anothers right is worſe then
„ tyrannie, eſpecially in a matter of ſuch conſequence
„ as the diſturbing the beautious *Deltona*, whom
„ ſome heauenly influence hath warranted that I

doe

and muſt enioy: aſſure you then no deuice, or force of man ſhall bereaue me of my claime, conſidering my interreſt.

Looke how ſome ſtrange apparition doeth ſet on worke the eyes of ſuch as are mooued with nouelties; ſo did the ſuddenneſſe of *Montanus* ſpeech amaze the hearers: for the King maruailed, *Rugio* ſtomached, *Egerius* gazed, *Coranus* with *Bertoſus* trembled, & all were ſilent; vntill the Duke grudging at the reprehenſion, durſt not giue way (as he ſuppoſed) to ſuch audacioufneſſe, but thought to ſlake the violence in this manner. Boldly ſpoken what ere thou art, yet ouer-caryed With preſumption (which many times ouer-throweth a good purpoſe, by taking a wrong courſe to ſuppreſſe a badde) thou abuſeſt a Prince, and haſt waded further then ſtrength is able to deliuer, or policie to refraine: beſides it is not for Shepheards and men of baſe eſtates, to entermeddle with the actions of perſons priuiledged, and ſacred: But to permit a ſtraggling vp-ſtart thus afore my owne ſubiects, the King in preſence, in my Court, and to my face, to diſtaine my honour, which neuer was impeached? I may not, I will not, I cannot abide it, though my pleaſure maintained a fault indeed.

A fault (replyed *Montanus*) by *Marpeſias* Altar ſuch a fault, that vnleſſe you determine otherwiſe, then to affright the peereleſſe *Deltona*; it is not menaces, or titular dignities, ſhall keepe reuenge from ſending her miniſters amongſt you;

or make me ſubiect (againſt vertue) to imperious will.

The King *Zalby* was much mooued at this, but *Rugio* more; as ſuſpecting a purpoſed neglect of dutie: yet perceiuing a ſetled countenance, and vndeuided ſpeeches to conclude the rebuke, they knew not how to enterpret it; conſidering the partie reputed an inferiour amongſt them: at laſt they called *Coranus*, who more fearefull to oppoſe againſt the Duke, then firme in expectation of *Montanus*, told them of his ſhipwracke at Seas *Placandus* entertainement; his loue to *Deltona*, the Contract at the Caue, and in a ſparing manner, how he promiſed her to diſcouer a further ſecret: which wrought thus much, that the King fore-ſaw there might be cauſe of affliction; and he ſeemed likely to be of better account, by which reaſon the Duke was pacified, and *Montanus* moderated his forwardneſſe: but who had ſeene *Egerius* behold him in this extaſie pleading for *Deltona*, would haue ſworne he had beene contemplating ſome Prodegie: preſently *Philano* aduaunced himſelfe, and aſking *Egerius* what troubled him, bade him withall tell his opinion of *Montanus*. Truely (ſayd *Egerius*) accidents of admiration chance in the world, and men are ſubiect to high direction, ſo that it muſt needs fall out, that hee hath beene ouer-burdened with extremitie, and is ſure of better deſert then the outward habite or appearance, which hee the rather allowed, becauſe by his owne example

he

hee might immagine as vnlikely poſsibilities to come to paſſe. Well ſayd *Philano*, ere wee haue done, I beleeue, wee ſhall haue much to doe; for as yet we are in the midſt of a confuſion, and ignorance tryumphes ſhe hath, and muſt make vs aſtoniſhed. But the Duke (loth that a time of mirth and entertainment ſhould bee out-faced with trouble and diſmay) diſmiſſed them awhile, euery man to his owne courſe, and imployed himſelfe to honor the King with entertainment befitting; whereuppon a ſolemne hunting inuited him to varietie of paſtime, and no man was wanting, whom place or pleaſure induced to attend: and as you ſee a cunning enemie obſcure himſelfe in ſome remote place of aduauntage, when hee apprehendeth a ſtronger force is comming againſt him: So played the Inhabitants of theſe woods, after they vnderſtood how they were beſieged; till ſuſpecting the ill ſucceſſe of a tryall, they tooke aduantage to eſcape, little thinking that their ſteppes betrayed them, and gaue notice to the aduerſarie of their beeing; who by this time diſcrying their flight, ſhooted for ioy, as if already victory had adminiſtred both renowne and reward: in the end, leaſt delay might breed diſaduantage, the Houndes (with the addition of their Maſters policie in laying of Toiles, and orderly following the execution) quickly ouer-tooke them in the Retreat, and them ſubiected to a furious ſlaughter. But the Officers loth to make too tyrannous a ſpoyle,

ſounded the rechaite, ſo the reſt at randome were aſſured of more reſt; yet reſted not the Duke, till he conducted the King in to a gallant Arbour, ſo cunningly handled, that a man might haue ſaid the deuiſer determined to grace the walkes of the Pallace with a worke of ſpecialtie, and ſet foorth his owne praiſes, as if he were by it to commend himſelfe; for who could, but aske his name to know him, and extoll him once knowne.

Heere was a roiall Banquet prepared, and an after time of Counſell (ſorting with the conuenience of the place) concluded, that *Bertoſus* ſhould end the Storie of *Mengrelius*; who as willing to be diſburdened of hir owne feares, as they ſeemed to be acquainted with others fortune, ſent for *Montanus* to come within hearing, and thus began.

Bertoſus proceedeth in the ſtory of Mengrelius.

AFter *Gellida* and *Perinthum* had taken notice of our ſolitary life, knowing we retyred our ſelues in the fulneſſe of a good opinion, leaſt the deceiuing vanities of the world might endanger or entrappe vs, they committed the Infants vnto our charge; not without ſome circumſtances of the perill in the diſcouerie, the feare of both the *Empreſſes*, the troubles depending, and their owne reuerent care toward them, as if the hope of many Kingdomes lay heauy either vppon our diligence or negligence. Thus were wee much eſteemed for the reſort of the Kings daugh-

ters

ters vnto vs, who indeede often viſited, and as often rewarded vs; ſo that wee had cauſe to bee carefull, as well for their ſakes that commanded, as theirs wee had in cuſtodie: this wee performed with reaſonable ſucceſſe. For the time of Nurſing ouer-paſſed, the Princes ſeemed to ſcorne their Infancie by entertaining a third year, to which they poſted with ſuch a gallantneſſe, as if indeede they had knowne with iudgement to haue welcommed all gallantneſſe. But (moſt Noble *King* and *Duke*) looke how a ſuddaine ſtorme is ſo much the more terrible to a well burdened Barke, by how much it is in iollitie of a good beginning, and almoſt in ſight of ſafe harbour; ſo was the pride of our hopes rebuked; and when wee leaſt ſuſpected alteration in ſuch a kinde, there happened a moſt vnkinde alteration. For as my brother and I ſolaced the Princes in the walkes of a pretty Groue, whereon the handy-worke of man had beſtowed addition, and ſtood playing the wantons with conceit of their towardlineſſe, who by this time ſeemed the Heauens charge, as well as our charge; comes the Arch-pirate *Cleonidas*, and altering the manner (though not the profeſsion) hurried vs together toward the Hauen, where his ſhips lay at Anchor.

With that *Montanus* in ſuddaine motion interrupted his ſpeech, & hearing the name of *Cleonidas* pronounced, cried out: O Eternall Powers!

" hath *Cleonidas* been an Actor in this Tragedie, and
" do I liue to heare ſo odious a ſound to my ſences?
" Or ſhall I liue to thanke the gracious *Nemeſis* for
" his deſtruction? Or may I liue to reuenge my diſ-
" graces: if the *Ocean* haue ſcorned to bee poiſoned
" with his carkas? O *Princes!* pardon my impati-
" ence: this is the head from whence my affliction
" ſprings, and runneth into a ſtrong channell of diſ-
" quiet. this is the roote ſupporting a ſtocke of miſe-
" rie, and ſpreadeth into branches of all vnhappi-
" neſſe to ſhade my happineſſe: this is the author of
" ſuch immanitie, as my tongue trembleth to report
" it; though he ſeemed raiſed from the deepeſt hell
" to put it in practiſe. As he was ſetting forward this
" inuection, King *Zalby* perceiuing hee had awaked
ſome conceit of importance, roſe vp with a milde
intent of pacification (leaſt in counterchecking the
humour, it might either grow to violence, or ex-
" aſperate his diſcontent) and thus perſwaded him:
" Princely *Montanus*, We are not ſo incredulous of
" thoſe infinite accidentes, which are directed by
" higheſt influence, as to oppoſe againſt your deſert;
" but lay the fault of our ſlight reſpect vpon igno-
" rance, and permit *Bertoſus* to goe forward: then
" by a Kings proteſtations, I ſweare, your deſires
" ſhall not range to ſuch a ſcope, but wee will bring
" them within limitation; and if neede requireth,
" with a royall conſent aſsiſt your deſires. By this
time had diſcretion wonne the field, and *Mon-
tanus* ſeemed halfe aſhamed, yet loth to make any

demiſſe

demiſſe appearance, hee thus replyed: Vertue (great King) I ſee will be like a ſquare Die, euery way caſt ſtanding vpright: your wiſedome hath ouer-ballanced my diſtemperature, and in a manner recouered my deſpaire, I will therefore faſten my anchor on the holde of your honourable promiſes, and attend more chearefully the diſcourſe: with that he ſate downe, and *Bertoſus* proceeded.

Cleonidas hauing ranged farre from his ſhippes, ouer-tooke vs thus accompanied, and as wee thought to rudely, queſtioned our names, eſtates, and dwelling; wee ſuppoſing the reuerence of our King would haue made our peace, and the reſpect to the Princely Infants aſſured our libertie, boldly made anſwer, whatſoeuer you be, or intend; We are the Kings ſeruants, and theſe be the Kings children, and you and theſe (quoth one amongſt the reſt) be now priſoners to *Cleonidas*, and ſo ſhall remaine, til the tyrannous *Perinthum* redeeme them with the price of her honour; by this time wee vnderſtood enough, and more then was pleaſing (vnleſſe you may immagine an offender ſtanding before a ſeuere Iudge, vrging his fault to as cruell a Iurie, and after their verdict giuing ſentence of death, pleaſed with the ſame) for *Cleonidas* we knew, and his deſpight wee knew, and the cauſe of *Cleonidas* deſpight we knew flowed from the current of this venemous ſtreame.

The Empres children with Coramus and Bertoſus taken priſoners by Cleonidas.

Artabazes

The ſtory of Parxus and Monedemus.

Artabazes was no ſooner inueſted with the roialties of *Armenia*, but *Cleonidas* taking his baniſhment in diſgrace exprobrated his ſimplicitie, that had not more iudicially proceeded wherupon (as hee ſuppoſed, to recouer his credit, rather then for any mallice to the King) he attempted a ſecond innouation, but herein his will exceeded his fortune: for the valliant *Pelorus Artabazes* Admirall, ere he once ſet foot on land diſcomfited him at ſea; and enforced his reculing to the dry *Iland*: where *Cleonidas* tooke a newe courſe of life both by Piracie, whereby hee gathered infinite wealth, and mercenary aſsiſting other *Princes*, which obtained him many friends. In the time of this wantonneſſe, on the borders of *Capadocia* was reſident as Prouincial Gouernor *Prazus*, a *Gent*, of an ancient houſe and great eſtate, had not the crueltie of the warres walted the ſame; but now ſomewhat reſetled by his owne endeauours and policie, and in reaſonable good grace with the king *Opacus* for his ſeruice; hee thought vpon nothing ſo much as the addition of Honour to his houſe: but apprehending a kinde of error in the kings wants, who was counted to exchang fauour for money, and vnwilling to giue him cauſe of diſtaſting, conſidering that aduancements depend on the pleaſure of the Prince; hee conferred with his friends about the king, and ſuch whom ſeruice at Court had eſpecially graced: ſo that perceiuing the

the vſe of their fauour, he compared himſelfe to a man ready for entrance in to ſome pleaſant Gallery, wherof he had the right, but another keepeth the Key: at laſt reaſon, reward, or his owne worth preuailed with them, & they inferred to the King the neceſsitie of the gouernment, the deſeart of the Gent. not without addition, how hee had loſt his Goodes, ſpent his Reuenewes, and haſſarded his Life: thus was the King prepared. Then proceeded they further by putting him in memorie, how the Vertuous expect a Recompence, as well as the Wicked deſerue Puniſhment: And laſtly, as the ſtring, which yeelded the ſweete ſound of the Muſicke, they touched this, that a preſent ſumme of Mony and yearely Reuenewes, would come into the Treaſurie. I will not ſay it preuayled; but the King moſt graciouſly ennobled him with the title of *Exarchate*, and conſtituted him Gouernour during life, according to the Lawes of the Land; whereuppon now the Lord *Praxus* was enforced to try *Menedemus* for a competent portion of money to defray his charges, that the entrance into his new Honour in good faſhion might eſtabliſh the opinion of the people by applauding his worth. This was a wretch liuing in the ſtrength and delicateſt place of all the Kingdome; and had culled out the ſweeteſt dwellings, and peeces of Land to make his Inheritance ſufficient, like a skilfull Marchant who determining to iourney into a ſtrange Country, and con-

" triuing to returne with credite and gaine, ſearch-
" eth euery Shoppe of a Citie, and ſelected the beſt
" Peeces, the curioſteſt Stuffe, the choyſeſt Dellicats,
" and what els he needeth to ſerue his turne: Yet for all this was the threed of his life drawne from ſuch a minde, as ſeemed made of filth and durt, and the very dregges of Miſerie: For abroad his complaints were of the ill thriuing of his Cattle, the vntoward groth of his Corne, the ill payment of the Tenants, the want of Money; when yet it was well knowne, hee had alwayes great ſummes lying by him; ſo that the bad vſe of Natures bleſſings, made him want indeed; and that vilde diſpoſition, wrought him odious to Man, hatefull to God, and irkeſome to himſelfe: Within dores the Seruants were negligent, the Wife too lauiſh, the Children too importunate, the Strangers too cumberſome, the Kindred and Friendes bent to vndoe him: Beſides, hee was accompanied with theſe ill Conditions, ridiculous Pride to make men imagine, this baſeneſſe the meanes to haue him ſelfe glorified; heart-vexing Enuie to ſee any thriue by him, or poſſeſſe their eſtats in good order: Impudent delight to heare of an others Ouerthrow, or Decay; and inhumane crueltie, if the errour or inconueniences of life draue men into his danger: But to ſee him about his owne houſe accompanied with Peſants all ill apparelled, as himſelfe ſweaty, greaſy, duſty naſty, and what-els maketh a man odious, would ſhew a very comicall

Tragedy.

Tragedy: And if neceſsitie wreſted the disburſing of ſome ſmall ſummes, hee would excruciate him ſelfe; but when the State compelled his acceſſe, what curſings, what execrations, what torments? yet goe he muſt, and in ſuch a manner, as I cannot with patience deſcribe it; him-ſelfe like a Pedler with foule Linnen, beaſtly Garments, patcht, ſeamerent, and greaſie, and worſe then a Slaue: His men brought to his owne bent, Carters, Ploughmen, Shepheards, and ſuch as were imployed in the greateſt drudgerie: His Horſe and Furniture part old, broken, and foule; part ſuch as hee vſed in his buſineſſe, and part pawned, forfayted, or bought at ſecond hand: Onely this I muſt needes ſay, ſome things of his Auncestors he vſed in ſparing manner, which were good, and made the reſt more rediculous.

With ſuch a fellow was *Praxus* to deale withall, and had ſo many delayes, ſuch excuſes, ſuch foreſwearings, yea teares from his eyes flowing from an hipocriticall heart, that he knew not whether to laugh, or to be angry: at laſt vpon ſufficient ſecuritie of a Morgage; a Lordſhip, on which hee had long ſince caſt his eyes for his younger Sonne, like him that ouerlooketh a flocke of Sheepe to ſee which be ready for the Butcher, or to inrich his Purſe; the Money was lent, and *Menedemus* tormented him ſelfe, not ſo much for feare of the ſecuritie, as to depart from the company of his Treaſure. Now betweene the time of repaiment,

Menedemus had brought to his house the beautious *Lausana*, a Ladyes daughter left in ward to the King, and by this Monster of Nature bought out, more to make benefite of, then for loue to his sonne, or any other, whom her owne worth without addition, might well satisfie. With her did L. *Praxus* fall in loue; and seeing the forwardnes of so many Graces in so gracious a person, assured him selfe, they could not chose but grow vp to the becomming of the place wherein they were sette, and bring all wealth, happinesse, and contentment to him whose fortune had alotted the Harueſt; but perceiuing the difficulty of obtaining her, by reason of *Menedemus* bad disposition & ielosie, and that he was aleady engaged, and within his danger, (as you haue heard) he knew not well how to proceed; at last he contriued not to pay his Mony, and by a little stretching his Authoritie, sent a band of Souldiers to keepe possession of the Place; all which, he said, was for the wretches good, because if he would consent to the Contract of *Lausana*, he might at one payment receiue the Mony borrowed, and what he had disbursed for her Wardship; otherwise he would inferre to the King and Counsell, the complaints against him, the mischiefes he had procured, and some other enforcements, which would ouerthrow him for euer. Heere was *Menedemus* in an extasie, hauing so many Crosses, (as hee tearmed them) to be cleared of, as to be vtterly vndone for want of his Money,

to

to be vexed in ſoule with the feare of this accuſation, and to be put to greater charge in conteſting with the gouerner: but the ſecret of this terror depended on a priuate commaund from the king not to cellebrate *Lauſan as* mariage without his conſent; nor to yeeld to any contract to another vnlicenſed from the ſtate: This he tould *Praxus* with a ſtrange kinde of trembling, that he hoped he would not ſeeke his ouer-throw, nor put him to trouble in recouering his owne: but *Praxus* by faire intreatie not to ſuſpect diſpleaſure, conſidering ſhe ſhould rather be aduanced then diſparaged, wonne him to thinke well of the Maryage, and by engaging his Honour to ſee him ſecured or otherwiſe not damnefied, made ſome return of comfort, but indeed the abſolute deniall of his Money, vnleſſe he conſented to this courſe, enforced him at laſt to forget dutie and honeſtie; and ſo with a chearfulneſſe in the receipt thereof, hee deliuered *Lauſana* to *Praxus*: for which, hee gratified the wretch beyonde expectation. Thus either returned; *Menedemus* to his miſerable life, and *Praxus* to ſolemniſe the Triumph of his delight: wherein without doubt (if hee had proceeded with the Kings fauour) a happie contentment had been the reward of counterchangeable worth, and liking.

By this time is *Opacus* acquainted with each circumſtance, wherupon he ſommoned both *Praxus* and *Menedemus* to appeare at *Archelais*, which

Praxus would haue done, had not the other for feare of expences absolutely denied it, and putting him in minde of his promises, and how for his sake these dangers were threatned, detracted the time so long, that *Opacus* stomaching the contempt proclaimed them both Traitors, their goods and Landes to be confiscate, & their persons infamous and subiect to the Law: this newes had almost made cowardise the seruant of Valure. For *Menedemus* would haue kild himselfe, or rather hanged himselfe, least he should haue seene his one blood, had not *Praxus* awaked his drowsinesse with warrantice and comforte, that rather then for so slight offence extremity should open the gates of cruelties; *Curatsax* king of *Iberia* (to whom *Praxus* was of alliance, would not suffer him without cause to perish: this made them stand on their guard, and exasperated the kinges displeasure, who came forward in persone to represse the insolency, wherby *Praxus* was enforced indeed to expostulate the matter and after true intimation of the cause, and the kings extremitie, drue *Curatsax* with a sufficient Armie as auxiliary: so a ciuell warre (which more and more like a new kindled fier suffered to wast the woode by degrees) burst foorth at last with flames of dispight and desolation, especially to *Capodocia*, where in it continued and began, and *Opacus* was constrained to higher *Cleonidas*, who at this time kept about the Riuer *Cirus*, and when he list to come vp into the Country carried his

his Boates on Camelles backes ouer the Mountaines, leauing his shippes sufficiently conducted and secured, with his ayde and the death of *Menedemus*, (who in a time of Truce would needes goe see his Land, and in what estate his inheritance stood, but was intercepted by certaine of *Cleonidus* new Soldiers, to whom his owne Tenants had betrayed him, and so submitted to their fury, was the Warres ended, *Praxus* restored to the kings fauour, and the King of *Iberia* dismissed.

The story of Cleonidas and Perinthum.

THis businesse thus ouerpassed *Opacus* inuited *Cleonidas* to the Pallace, as well to gratefie his vertue, as to pay his Soldiers: heere had he sight and conference with *Perinthum* the Kinges second daughter, and whether the opinion of his owne worth, or the vnfained affection vnto her, induced; in very good manner he demaunded her loue, had not loue commaunded the contrary, which at the first was taken as a custome amongst womẽ, till a continuall repugnancy both in speech & action shewed rather a scorne, then neglect of his suite: this agrauated his greife, but not extenuated his passiõ, because questionlesse subiected to her perfection, and now debarred from the thinge he desired, he resembled a man in a continuall feuer, still longing for what he is forbidden, and loathing what is prescribed: At last rather enflamed, then enamored, he vrged *Opacus* consent, who to be plaine neither

"ther durſt deny, nor would accord: reſembling a
"man holding the Woolfe by the eare, which if he
"hold faſt he is ſure to be bitten, if he let looſe, he
"is in danger of life: So he feared on the one ſide
"*Cleonidas* reuenge in the deniall, and his daughters
"defamation in the accord: yet ſeing the neceſsitie
of the buſineſſe, and the others importunitie for
an anſwer: kindneſſe had reciprocall paſſage be-
tweene them, and the king tooke time to conferre
with his daughter.

But *Perinthum* aſſured her father, that her faul-
con pitched a higher flight, which he not much
"miſliked, and therefore to auoyd all inconue-
"niences ſent her with *Gellida*, her other ſiſter
to attend the *Empres* of *Trebizond*, and enfor-
med *Cleanidas*, as though their owne wilfulneſſe,
or deſier to be acquainted with a place of ſuch re-
nowne had vndertaken the progreſſe: To this
excuſe he knew not how to oppoſe. For finding
Opacus rather wiſhing a pacification of the diſplea-
ſure, then countenancing the Vnkindneſſe, he
moderated his Indignation; and ſo departed, nei-
ther warranting his loue, nor expreſsing his hate
to the Country: Till vnderſtanding of the Ladies
returne, hee practiſed many meanes to circomuent
her; and fayling in them, as many forages to diſ-
quiet the Land, which ſome times with ſucceſſe
had outragious effectes; ſome times with ſtronge
hand, as forcible repulſes; till at laſt, Fortune wil-
ling to doe him a pleaſure, as the Champion of

her

her quarrels, brought this prey to his choyſe, and him to this place at ſuch time, as wee were playing with the Princely Infants: ſo that the action related his pride in vnmannerly haſtineſſe hurrying vs away; and thanked Opportunitie, as it ſhould ſeeme, without further queſtions in vnproper cruelty tying vs in bands: For all wee intreated with teares, threatned with anger; lamented with ſighes, anon rayled on their preſumption, after offred ſufficient ranſome; and laſt of all, pleaded conſcience, manhood, and the Law of all Nations. The Infants in the meane while, ſmiling at the vproare, neither diſmayed with the company as Strangers, nor action as troubleſome: But neither intreaties, promiſes, prayers, offers, threatnings, nor exclamations, could preuaile: Forwith tedious Iornies they brought vs to the Sea ſide, where their Shippes lay at anchor, and were ready to attend the caulling of the Winde, who by this time, began to chide our negligence, that was not thankfull to ſo kind putting vs in minde of our buſineſſe: onely wee expected the comming backe of the Captaine; whom *Cleonidas* had ſent to certifie *Opacus* of the accident.

But when his returne aſſured an illuſion, and that the king diſclaimed any right to the infants, warranting withall the fiction, but a deuice to ſet our ſelues at libertie: neuer was ſo fit a time to pattern out wrath and fury, as in *Cleonidas* whoſe eies gliſtered like Fier, and impatience ſcarce for-

bore with his owne hands to teare vs a peeces, commaunding vs to be tortured for deluding him; which as a villaine was forward to execute foure great *Quinquiremes* scowred first by vs, and after winded about, as if they meant with aduantage to set vpon vs: Which when *Cleonidas* had beheld with the eyes of aduice, and perceiuing they were but Messengers of some mischiefe following, (for by this time hee had descried the whole Fleete,) we were a while forgotten, and hee (to our amase) proceeded with such courage and iudgement, that in applying the like to generous performaunces, hee might haue prooued a sufficient member of a politicall body: for the Souldiers were placed each one in a congruent distance, least shuffled togeather, might haue bred a confusion: The Fireworkes were prepared, the Fights were ouerseene, enclosed, and well flancked; the Weapons were considered on either to skirmish a farre off, or to grapple, if need required; and the vnable and insufficient, were separated into some remote corner from troubling the rest: Amongst whom, was our account cast; yet some honorable concite vnwilling to be tyranous against Infants, and men vnlikly to be preiudiciall, remitted vs from bands, and imbarked vs into a very good brigandine to be transported to the *Dry Iland*: where the strength and conueniencie of the place both secured, and contented him, when he list to make his retreat.

Thus

THus were we parted from the company of death and danger; for *Cleonidas* presently made toward the Gallies, but (Most mighty Princes) how the wrathfull *Nemesis*, or his fortunate *Genius* determined of him I know not, because, vntill this occasion, his name was neuer once a subiect to talke of, though his wretchednesse yeelded many times sufficient matter to thinke on. But wee kept a steady passage to our Harbour, and had cause of comfort, when the trauell of foure dayes brought vs within the sight of the Iland: Yet looke, how a sparke of Fire euen at the very present of his taking leaue of the heate giueth the greater light; so wee gaue a sodaine shoot of ioy, with a Swanlike dittie, at the instant of our destruction: For on a sodaine, a North-west winde whirled the Barke about, and though the Mariners endeuored the contrary, wee as quickly lost, as enioyed the former delight: Then followed a Storme, which with continuance vnited to the Winde, raised a dangerous Tempest: last of all, approched a second Darkenesse, wherein the night drew her Cuttaines to hide vs from the face of Heauen, had not the contention in those vpper Regions giuen vs more light, then wee wished, because bringing terrour with the Thunder, wee neither durst behold either Earth, or Heauen. On the other side, the Sea hearing the bigg voyce of the Windes, awaked her sluggishnesse, and

The Shipwracke of Coranus and Bertosus with the Emperors children, who are here discouered to be Egerius & Deltona: But by their proper names Trezobore & Brizaca.

perceiuing ſuch variance betwixt the Fire & Aire for ſuperioritie, would not imbace her ſelfe, but thought to make her greatneſſe appeare, as well as they; and ſo ſwelled beyond meaſure, growing to that rage, that wee thought it better to be ſubiect to Men, then implacable Waues.

This continued a whole day and night, and the continuance wrought effect to put vs in minde of our frailtie, and to make preperation for another dwelling, becauſe the Barcke vnable to houſe vs, was willing to dislodge vs; and we likewiſe grew weary of being ſuch Tenants, eſpecially my poore Brother and I, who ſeemed dying, before death; and ten times dying, to behold the ſweete Infants cling to vs for ſuccour, who were not able to helpe our ſelues: Yet at laſt Nature preuayling againſt Wilfulneſſe, wee determined to tarry for, rather then to runne to ſo bad a friend as Death, and therefore agreed to ſtriue with Redreſſe, if wee could, and to tie the Children to our backes, concluding to change their Names what euer chaunced; and withall, changed our Places, ſetling our ſelues neere to ſome ſtrong Planckes, and Cheſtes: So, by that time our *Genius* aſſured the ſplitting of the Shippe, I was ſafe in this vnſafetie on a ſeaſoned Truncke of Firre, and my Brother on a ſpare Maſt; both which, floted for a while
« neere the diſmembred Barke, like ſilly Birdes ho-
« uering about their Mother entrapped in a Nette,
« and leaue her not, till the Fawkner aſſure, hee is the

meſſenger

messenger of death. What should I say (most mightie King) the feare was more then the danger; and yet may the greatest scorner of Perils, confesse the danger exceeded any meanes, which humaine pollecie had to auoyde it, considering our burdens, and combersome company, which did rather augment, then diminish our griefe. For alas, to be in hassard of drowning amidst the cruell Billowes, desperat of succour, on vnfirme seates, and with infant Princes tyed to our backes, who can but thinke wee had sorrow sufficient, and suppose our heauinesse a wonderfull temptation: At length we seemed cheared with a life cast in a new mold by perceiuing faire weather approching, resembling a condemned person meditating with repen- »
tance, and sadly casting his lookes on the ground, »
as not daring to lift them vp to heauen, till the »
sound of a Pardon infuseth strength and courage »
into his decayed soule: whereupon wee setled vp our selues, and began to appease the Children, who as if they meant to finde fault with Fortunes discourtesie, exclaymed on her vnkindnesse by pleading their owne innocencie; which whether it were with the inforcement penetrable, or that the Gods meant to shew their power in contrarieties (I dare not verdict) but presently to our amaze, & their pacification, a gallant calme succeeded, and the outward face of heauen suffered her blacknes to be wiped away, whereby it appeared like the milde mother of the earth; so that it was my good happe

to driue vnder the Walles of *Fortona*, where a Fisher stood drying his Nettes, whom as I learnt afterwad, was the old *Piscaro*; and as I had cause to acknowledge, was the honest *Piscaro*: For seeing some strange thing floting a farre off, hee watched to helpe, if hee could; and graciously helped when hee could: So my safetie increased with his comfort; in which loth to appeare defectiue, hee had me presently to his House, confirming his Charitie by his good Workes.

Bertosus suffering shipwracke is taken vp by Piscarro & nameth Trezoboro Egerus.

NOw when hee presumed on my strength, hee questioned with mee about my Shipwracke; and to be plaine, I made a round excuse, as though *Cleonides* had set fire on my poore dwelling in *Persia*, and caried mee Prisoner to his *Iland*, till a tempest deuided vs, and sent mee floting, as hee found. I but (quoth *Piscarro*) would a Pirate permit you so much leasure to tie your Child to your backe, and giue you libertie to make such shift? Questionlesse (replyed I) you hau made a pretty doubt; yet must the truth thus resolue you, and fauour him, that out of furie, hee is most pittifull, and worthy of a good report. This was the excuse I made, and with this excuse was my peace made; so that I remayned with him a while rather willing to please, then to complaine of my owne discontentment: but when he found my endeuours consorting to his disposition, as though I ment to checke ingratitude, he professed a further liking,

liking, and very ſuddenly imparted his wealth vnto me: to be breife with him I continued ſome fiue yeeres not forgetting the bringing vp of my ſonne, who ſeemed of that forwardneſſe (as quickly learning and gracing whatſoeuer he learnt) that my contentment ſprang from his expectation: but this manner of life did not long laſt, becauſe *Piſcarro*, lasted not himſelfe, as ſummoned to a ſtricter tryall by the irreuocable ſentence of death: and preparing for another world made an oueraffection adopt me his heyre in this world, & left a ſtranger to be ſubiect vnto their mallice, that ſaw me poſſeſſed of his wealth, which though it amounted to no great matter, yet I compaſſed the dwelling I now enioy, and was able to bring vp *Egerius*, as you all can partly witneſſe: But ſeeing the winges of time haue thus ſpread out themſelues, and the booke of heauenly reuolutions turneth to this leafe, let not vs degenerat with dulneſſe or wilfulneſſe, but take out a new leſſon, and with reuerence acknowledge him the *Emperor Mengrelius* Sonne, and remember his true name to be *Ptincely Trezeboro*: For this is he, whom *Gellida* and *Perinthum* gaue me ſuch charge of.

But ſay *Coranus* (quoth King *Zathy*) after *Berſoſus* was thus vnkindly ſeperated from you, what fauour found you amongſt the toſsing ſurges? Not much vnlike my brother (replied *Coranus*) only in being thus deuided my ſorrow the rather encreaſed, and I ſeemed to lament his loſſe, as much

much as ſuſpect my owne danger: Now belike miſchiefe wery of her owne handyworke gaue liberty to an other ſceane to alter the act. For within two houres after, the calme preſented it ſelfe, I kenned a farre off a Fiſher boate; who conceiuing of our extremitie made as much haſt as my tongue did require their haſt: thus was I ſaued, and by their induſtry recouered, the old *Silenus* one of the Shepheards of the Downes commaunding it ſhould be ſo, and I was glad to finde it ſo; but more glad, when he brought vs home to his Houſe, where with louing care; and ſufficient meanes, wee had the comfortable effectes of good diligence, and honeſt looking vnto. But when I told him I was a man of Husbandry in *Armenia*, and was taken in a Paſſage-Boate by the Pirate *Cleonidas*, as I was traueling into *Media* to an elder Daughter there beſtowed, with this Child, hee much pitied my diſtreſſe: But when I tolde him, ſeeing Fortune was ſo croſſe vnto me (& pouertie muſt needes prooue comberſome, and the diſcouerer of imperfections) I would take any paines in an other Country to helpe my wants, rather then be a ſcandall to my ſelfe, a laughing ſtocke to my Enemies, & a ſcorne to my Friends; or at leaſt ſuch, as in former time profeſſed ſo; hee liked mee as a man of ſence, and added ſomewhat of his owne opinion. But when I told him, that the bond of his Kindneſſe had tyed mee to the ſtrict obſeruation of Satisfaction; and that I offered

offered him the fruit of my endeuors in his seruice, he tooke it in good part, made tryall of my industry, and welcommed me accordingly.

Coranus suffering shipwracke is taken vp by Selenus and nameth Brizaca Deltona.

There I remained vntill *Deltona* (for so I named *Brizaca*) was able to apprehend my instructions, and loth to let her loose the benefit of this towardlyneſſe I obtained of *Selenus* a Cottage by my selfe, wherin we liued, till she in her life florished, and I in her florishing prospered: For as if the graces had doated on her, each action she attempted was gratious, and I (as if fortune ment to turne her Wheele indeed,) in euery thing had good successe: in so much that with the admiration of her beautie & gallant behauiour *Deltona* obtained the chiefe place at the feast: & with regard of the companie, and my owne good vsage, the poore *Coranus* held the reputation you found him in: therefore (most Noble *Duke*) looke on her now with other eyes? for no longer *Deltona*, but the *Emperor Mengrelius* daughter; *Brizaca*.

By that time *Coranus* concluded his discourse, a generall muttering was heard, and raised a manner of confusion amongst them, wherein we will leaue them, till the extasie haue end: and as they begin to conferre of the strangneſſe, shall the time acquaint you with the story.

Finis Libri Secundi.

THE THIRD BOOKE of the Hiſtorie OF TREBIZOND.

Imprinted at London by W. White,
for *T. Downes* and *E. Dawſon*,
1616.

To the honorable Lady FRANCIS EGERTON.

HONORABLE LADY,

I Could flouriſh the colours of your Prayſes from Vertue, Beautie, Graceſulneſſe, Magnanimitie, and ſuch like enriching giftes of Nature: But at this time I will extend your worth no further, then that you are a faire promiſing Fruite of a glorious Tree; and ſo haue choſen you with the reſt, to ouer-ſhade mee from the tempeſtes of Detraction, conſidering I am now like a cecled Doue to flye abroad with ſtrange diſguiſes, and haue as it were matriculated my ſelfe in the Schoole of Folly, by writing of Bookes: Yet if you will relieue it, as a poore caſt-out Orphan, *then are you charitable: If you entertaine it for any cauſe in it ſelfe, then doe you Iuſtice: If you pardon the faults, then are you Vertuous: If you protect it, then are you Heroyicall: Nay, if you make it contemptible, I ſhall impute it to my owne ill deſer-*

166 *uing, not any deficiencie in you. But caſting theſe doubts aſide, I am confident, that you will either giue me leaue to make vſe of your Honorable ſupportation; or lift me vp your ſelfe with ſo ſtrong an arme, that neither Enuie nor Deriſion of others, ſhall ſhoulder me aſide from your acceptation; or come neere you, that are willing to be ſo gentle and graceſull vnto mee,*

Your Honors to commaund,

Th. Gainsforde.

The Third Booke of the Hiſtorie of TREBIZOND.

THe truth had no ſooner triumphed in *Deltonas* diſcouery, but ſeemed impatient at reſtraint, and therſore commaunded fame to diulge it abroad: yet who had at this inſtant beheld her, would haue ſworne ſhee ment to participate to ſome excellent artiſt a very patterne of modeſty and humilitie rather then ſtate and magnificenſe: For there neither appeared alteration, nor any new countenance; only that which ſeemed new, was a manner of ſcorne to thinke, how a vaine titell ſhould produce ſuch regard before vertue and deſert: Neither would ſhe haue admitted thoſe ceremonies, had not *Egerius* now her brother *Trezoboro* perſwaded, that „ though a diamond (howſoeuer ſet forth) is ſtill „ pretious, and a ſtone of eſtimation: yet arteficially „ polliſhed maketh apparant a greater luſtre, and „ augmenteth the vallue and ſufficiencie: So no „ doubt vertue & beautie in *Deltona Coranus* Child, „ were guiftes of ſingular delight and account, but in *Brizaca* the *Emperor Mengrelius* daughter, they were perfections and excellencies of admiration: thus ſhe was contented to diſmiſſe her former

Deltona thus reuealed doth not yet forget Montanus: but confeſſeth her loue.

mer ſtilneſſe & feare & appeared, as if maieſtie had framed a worke of oſtentation, which made the king, *Duke*, and the reſt, burden ignorance with the error of their ſlight reſpect, and deſired her to pardon the former negligence: to this ſhe was ſoone directed, and by her excellent behauiour, gaue notice of all thoſe additions, which make *Princes* famous to their eternall renowne.

In the time of this celebration, *Montanus* ſeemed forgotten: For euery one buſied themſelues with the matter in hand. The king to gratefie *Rugio* to purchaſe attonement, *Trezobore* to acknowlegde a Siſter, *Philano* to honour his friend, *Coranus* in recounting of ſecrets, and *Bertoſus* in diſcouering of circomſtances: ſo that *Montanus* too curiouſly ſtomaching the operation of ioy extended altogether toward another, entertained an vnkind ſuſpition of her neglect, which made him retyre to *Bertoſus* houſe, where his meditation was quickly welcomed to Ieloſy and miſdoubt, had not *Coranus* brought him tidinges of better conſequence vpon this occation.

Brizaca ſetled in glorious alteration, began to ranſacke the Cloſet of affection, and found the remembrance of *Montanus* mourning, that there ſeemed neede of a new ſearch, which made her challenge the company for his loſſes as if ſhe ment to giue them notice, that on his ſaftie depended her chiefeſt content. Now was a new hurliburly in the Pallace, and a new humor in the *Duke*, they

buſied

busied in the execution of her pleasure, and he repining to finde a concurrent in his loue: For if before her Comlinesse and Beautie had withdrawne Power from an incontinent libertie, now her Greatnesse and Maiestie rather inflamed, then enamored; which suggested emulation against *Montanus*, and might haue nourished those despights encreasing betweene riuals, had not the presence of *Brizaca* caused the returne of better consideration, and her last deniall assured shee was engaged with the bond of Fayth toward him.

Thus was *Rugio* imperiously ruled, and for her » pleasure displeasingly pleased: so he sent *Coranus* » and *Bertosus* abroad, who comming home, found » *Montanus* in a manner ouercharged with griefe. » Why how now (quoth *Bertosus*,) is this the con- » querour of Misfortune? and terrour of Licenti- » ousnesse? Did you exclaime against *Rugio*, to our » amase, and disquiet the King with your heroyicke » reprehention? Is *Brizaca* lesse regarded an Em- » perours Daughter, then when shee was *Deltona*, » the reputed Child of *Coranus?* Where is Courage and Magnanimitie? Where is Hope and Resolution? Where is Loue and Delight? See Loue, (replyed *Montanus*) but little Delight: For what goodnesse can I expect, when at the very first, Disdaine and Contempt proceeded against mee? no man more deseruing, no man lesse regarded. Tush (answered *Bertosus*) Imagination is the mo-

ther of Trouble; let me therefore bring these glad tidings, that how-euer the strangenesse wrought in vs, and extasy was effectuall in them; yet is *Brizaca* honourable, constant, and resolute toward you. Toward mee (quoth *Montanus*,) how can a Shepheard bee remembred amongst Princes? Truly (sayd *Coranus*) if I may speake without offence, ouer-liberally credulous of your Promise, shee reprehended mee for your absence, and sware shee would forget her new name, if it should be an obstacle to her desires. Well (said *Montanus*) I allow of the deceit, and am content to checke my suspition: I request you therefore like men, let vs beleeue the Gods remaine vncontroulable; and like friendes, suffer mee to make this vse of your kindnesse, to certifie *Deltona* (for as yet I dare not name *Brizaca*) that my life and loue dependeth on her respect; whereon I will aduance the trophes of Honour, when that sleeping Fame shall awake to tell her, *Montanus* is no lesse then a Monarch: In the meane while, I present her my Heart; but must absent my Bodily presence. Nay, reply not? For Heauen concludeth, my *Genius* perswadeth, and I am vnchangeable. With that, hee hasted out of the Cittie, and left them to maruell at the wilfulnesse.

Montanus departeth from Fortona.

Thus they returned to the Court, assuring the Duke hee was not to be found: But imparting to *Brizaca* the matter as it chanced, and the manner, as the circumstances effected; in commending with-

withall his care (exceeding all other care) to be restored to the possession of happinesse: This somewhat setled her feare, and yet troubled her opinion, considering she could not apprehend, whither hee should goe, vnlesse to *Placandus*. In the meane while, *Trezoboro* and the *Duke*, concluded to proclaime their discouerie in all the Kingdomes adioyning; which *Rugio* consented vnto, as well to make his endeauours plead his affection and desert to *Brizaca*, as to amplifie his renowne both abroad and at home: whereupon many Messengers assured diuers Princes, that truth and strangenesse had sent them; and they according to the nature desiring nouelties, by Commission or rather Warrants of safe conduct came to *Fortona*, ere the limitted time had fully spred her winges, and were welcommed accordingly: so that such as professed in chiualrie, made their cost rather extend to necessitie then wantonnesse; and such as had their Fancies tyed to other subiectes, seemed doubly charged, to make a mixture of armes and delight; but when the day approached, wherein glory determined a solemne inauguration, the entercourse of people gaue notice, as if they went to the Pallace of Honour, and the Duke added to his greatnesse and euerlasting fame, both by his demeanour and expences. In this manner proceeded the Triumph, and the Iudges of the Field were conducted to an imperiall Tent, equally deuiding the Listes, which were King *Zalby*: *Orcanus*

Lord of the Blew Ilands: and *Neſtorius* Prince of *Oxidracan:* the Ladyes diſcharging their nicetie, were as ready as the multitude, and the Knights came triumphantly forward: Amongſt whom the defendants ſhall receiue this ſparing commendation, that their outward brauery and gallantneſſe, made the beholders ſuppoſe it ſumptuous, and the perſon vnknowne, was worthily liked for his honourable minde and good intent: As for the Challengers (how euer ſome cenſor doe except againſt the time, which had not yet ripened inuention) they may not ſo ſlightly ouerpaſſe my remembrance.

Ligornio heire and hope of *Bactriana* brother in law to *Rugio*, and newly betrothed to the faire *Ramira*, a daughter of *Artaxerxes Prince* of *Suſiana*, had his Capariſon of a Sea colour ſatten, ſo artificially embrodered with a tempeſtuous water deuided into broken waues by the purling of the Silke and Siluer, that the contention aroſe, whether the coſt or the cunning exceeded: for at euery corner of the Quarters, you might deſcry a Shippe in harbour of ſafetie. The Mott was: *Tandem*.

Sacromirus ſonne of *Hircania*, ware a purple Veluet, all ſpotted and embrodred with *Panthers*; but ſo done, as wee well might know, *Hircania* affoorded this Beaſt exceeding other Countries, and hee affected them ſurpaſsing other men, as if hee meant to diſcouer, that looke what property

Nature

Nature bestowed vpon them, hee assumed to him selfe. The Mott : *Si saturatus mitis.*

Seleucus heyre of *Margiana*, on a curious Cloth of Siluer had in diuers places a Rocke deciphered, resembling that, which protected the Country from inuasion, and assured; the place it selfe was also impreguable. The Mott; *Hoc cape et regna.*

Belnidus the sonne of *Carmania*, bare a Peach-colour Veluet purled ouer with siluer and gold Wier; but so artificially wrought, that you might perceiue a cut off Head on an Altar, as if hee meant to tell vs, that Loue was there obtained with the price of their enemies Heads The Mott: *Sic amor conquiritur.*

Culanus King of *Sogdiana* hauing matched with the heroyicall *Tarina* Queene of *Saca*, thought no scorne to blazon her excellencies, and therefore on a Watchet Satten embost with Gold had her resemblance portrayted, and himselfe kneeling before her, wherein the chiefest care consisted to decipher, that Beautie and Vallour, had doubly enforced his yeelding vnto her. The Mott: *Non pudet vinci.*

Philano sonne to *Rugio* on an Azure Damaske, bare a resplendant Sun, so excellently embost, that the very Rayes gaue shew of a glorious light; but when we perceiued certaine Cloudes of Silke and Siluer, as it were thrust into a corner, wee then remembred a greater force might put a weaker enemie to retreat. The Mott: *Sic gloria desidiam.*

Trezoboro on a ruſſet Veluet cut in pierced maſcelles vpon azure Perſian ſtuffe, had diuers Crownes of Gold-ſmiths worke; ouer whom an Enameled eye ſeemed to take the charge. The Mott: *Quis amittet?*

The *Duke* himſelfe ware on an Orenge ſatten an embrodred Arme, ſhaking a Sword out of a fiery Cloude, and ſo wrought, as if it receiued life from a Heart threatning deſpight. The Mott: *Vindicta.*

Thus paſſed the Ceremonies of this Triumph; wherein is to be obſerued, that Valure and Delight made before-hand a bargaine with Miſchaunce, not to enter the Liſtes, or any way to impeach the Iollitie, being a thing determined for ſhow and pleaſure: Yet when it came to execution, the broken Lawnces flew into the ayre, ſcorning the compaſſe of a ſmall hold. The Horſes wearied with ill managing, disburdened themſelues of their vnfortunate Maſters. The Knights actiue in their ſeuerall encounters, (louing Virtue for her owne ſake) deſiſted not for one repulſe; but againe and againe made their tryall: Amongſt whom, *Rugio* enforced himſelfe beyond expectation (as caryed with a paſſhionate violence toward *Brizaca*;) for though hee had broken fourty Lawnces, and ouerthrowne ſixteene Knights; yet ſcorned hee a ſurceance, till the fortune of the day confirmed the Prize to his worth: But as his forwardneſſe inſulted with his merit, a ſuddaine hurliburly at the Weſt ende of the Tilt, expoſed

posed new matter of variety, and came thus to passe.

Montanus commeth to Placandus: his father & prepareth himselfe against the Triumph.

Montanus went directly to his father *Placandus*, ouer whom seuerall feares and sorrowes for the murder of *Franio*, and the disipation of his friendes had an vntoward gouernment: but it was quickly deposed by the returne of *Montanus*, who by this time was welcommed, as if a traueler hauing left a louing wife in the seuerall mistrustes of a dangerous vioage paste hope of returning presented himselfe by miracle vnto her: which occationed some ceremony of kindnesse, as well to strengthen the opinion of *Placandus* toward him, as to satisfie his curiosity, which neuer left ouer burdning him with questions: Wherupon he tould the old man of the *Dukes* stealing *Dettona*, her scorne and *Franios* trechery: he tould the old man, *Coranus* had found a brother, himselfe was entertained with *Bertosus*, and what had chanced concerning *Egerius*: he tould the old man *Mengrelius* story, king *Zalbys* comming to the Court, and *Deltonas* with her brothers discouery: he tould the old man the entertainement, which followed, the embassage concluded on, and the triumph proclamed, whither he was resolued to goe; which when *Placandus* rather wondred at, then impugned, hee told the old Man of his misfortunes, the fight with

with *Cleonidas*, and his right to the kingdome of *Armenia*: To be breefe he tould the old man he was the Prince *Anzitemus*, of his contract at *Mengrelius* Caue, and how *Deltona* remained irremoueable, and vnaltred: of which though the ſtrangneſſe ſlacked his beleefe, yet was the truth ſo modeſtly vrged, & the likelyhood of his ſpeeches concurred with ſuch ſmothneſſe, that *Placandus* reioyced in the hope to find it ſo, and with a gladſome contraryetie ſeemed officious vnto him, as if he knew it was ſo. But when the next morning rumored the like circumſtances, he then obſerued all the partes of loue and ſecrecy, and according to his directions made ready Mony of his Cattell, moueables and ſuch like he poſſeſſed, with which *Montanus* furniſhed him ſelfe, as conueniently as he could, and at the time appoynted came into the field with a Capariſon curiouſly emboſt with watchet ſilke and gold counterchangeably layed vpon the ſame coulour *Perſian* ſtuffe: his deuiſe a lawrell floriſhing vnder a tempeſtuous Element, the Mote: *Salua tamen.*

Montanus commeth to the Triumph vnknowne.

Thus with a ſeemely Trot he paced to the Tilt, as if he determined to grace their expectation with a thing of ſome rareneſſe: For the Horſe commaunded manifeſted a ſcorne of wantonneſſe by a ſtately ſobrietie; and he commaunding, managed the beaſt without any wreſted mouinges or enforced reſtraintes: nor was the *Duke* much diſcontented with his approach (his courage enterpreting

terpreting it a pollecie of Honour to adde more fethers to the Wings of Fame, becauſe he had alredy made tryall of as good men at armes as any in *Aſia*: yet very loth, that miſchance ſhould make a mixture with that dayes glory, he ſhifted his weary Horſe, and tooke him to an old Bay, which rather (as if time had altered the coulour) ſeemed a perfect Cheſſe-nut, and ſo ſupplyed the roome againe, attending the ſommons of victory.

But when the Ladyes were made acquainted with the nouelrie, ſtrange was their deſier to know him, ſtrange was their griefe, that none could ſatisfie their deſier: As for the peerleſſe *Brizuea*, though ſhe could haue wiſhed him *Montanus*; and withall, remembred the good of *Montanus*: yet not able to thinke, what treaſurie in a place vnknowne, had opened her doores, ſhe deſiſted from ſuppoſing him *Montanus*: But whether, becauſe her minde had runne on *Montanus*, or that the nature of well wiſhing extendeth to the weaker ſide; ſhe once againe allowed him *Montanus*; and praiſed accordingly for the ſame ſucceſſe, as if it had beene to *Montanus*; but the Trumpets ſound gaue warning to put her other ſences in practiſe; and ſo the firſt courſe began, which paſſed both with liking to the beholders, and aſtoniſhment to *Rugio*, becauſe they perceiued a ſweeter cleanneſſe in the diuiſion, and hee felt a quicker ſtrength in his deliuery: yet knowing

" conceit was a weakning of courage, and the leaſt
" aduantage, deſcried a ſtep to Conqueſt, hee made
ready againe, and ſo fiue times togeather with
ſufficient equality concluded, and might ſurely
haue triumphed without impeachment, conſi-
dering the deeds of Armes, with whoſe applauſe
he had filled all mens eares the day before: but
that the Saddle at the ſixt encounter ſcorned the
weakeneſſe of his Strappes, and vnworthily diſ-
burdened it ſelfe of ſo worthy a Maſter; who ſee-
med ſomewhat perplexed to be ſo diſappoynted,
yet was pacefied in the diſpleaſure, when the reſt
receiued the ſame payment.

In this manner was Glory ſatisfied to ſee the
Vertue of this new Knight accompanied with
" good ſucceſſe, and ſo the Iudges with ſemblant
" ſuffrages, yeelded the honour of the triumph vn-
" to him: But hee vtterly diſclaymed to aſſume it,
" conſidering the *Duke* had continued longeſt in
the Field, and hee came like an Enemie in *ambuſ-
cado*, eſpying the beſt aduantage for his ſallying
foorth. To this *Rugio* oppoſed, as much pleaſed
with his reſpect, as opinion of the reſt: eſpecially
conſidering his hopes toward *Brizaca* were fru-
ſtrate, and therefore led him vp in great royalty to
receiue the Prize: where the admirable Princeſſe,
accompanied with many worthy Lapyes expec-
ted, to whoſe portion Fortune would allot it: But
when a full interuiew had taken away the vaile
of doubtfulneſſe, it was no kind entertainement,
but

but a ſence rauiſhing ioy publiſhed him *Montanus*, wherein ſhee might haue paſſed the limits of moderation, if *Trezoboro* had not ſommoned her to put her other graces in practiſe. Now when *Montanus* found him ſelfe the cauſe of this confuſed ſilence, and turmoyle, hee thought it high time to polliſh the rough way, and lead them to a plaine Field of his knowledge; whereupon hee vſed this preamble. Let not (great Princes) too » ſuddaine a cenſure paſſe vpon my preſumption » or negligence; but rather be incenſed againſt Ig- » norance, and my owne Misfortunes, if reſpect haue » not paſſed with her properties: But becauſe you » haue already participated with the diſcouery of » this peereleſſe Princeſſe, and yet ſtill continue as a » longing and louing Mother for the returne of an » other Sonne, affoord mee a litle patience, and I » will fill vp the meaſure of your hopes: Yet in re- » gard the Iourney I vndertake is tedious, and this » dayes trauell importuneth repoſe, I will diſpence awhile with the time, and procraſtinate your deſires till to morrowes conueniencie: But very quickly is the Sunne infeoffed with the nights inheritance, and *Trezoboro* in his ſiſters behalfe (ſtomaching the delay, hee thought *Montanus* made) challenged his honourable Promiſe, and accompanied him to King *Zalby*, the Duke, and reſt of the Princes; who by this, furniſhed a roome of State, wherein the chiefeſt things worthy regard was ſtrange expectation: So that after *Bri-*

zaca with her princely aſsiſtants, had enriched the place, *Montanus* with a ſolemne Maieſtie roſe vp, and with the ceremony of a reuerent obeyſance to them, a mannerly chearefulneſſe to her, and ſweet affabilitie to the reſt, thus began.

The Hiſtory of Artabazes and Olenus.

WHom ſo euer remembrance fauoreth with the occrurences of an age forepaſſed, muſt needes either read, or heare of the famous victories of *Armenus* ſurnamed the great, whoſe vallure ſubiected diuers reſiſting powers, and gaue name to the Country to his obedience reduced: In which hee had not long aduanced the Standard of imperiouſneſſe, but amongſt others, erected two eſpeciall Cittis *Sagarena*, and *Artaxata*: The firſt, correſponding to his Fathers: the ſecond, to her Name; for whoſe ſake the Country ſubmitted to a Strangers wroth. In theſe hee conſtituted Lawes for the Common-wealth, and Orders for the Court; which although ſeemed repugnant to the peoples diſpoſition, by reaſon they ſauored of new inuention, and combined them to a ſtrictneſſe, rather wreſting their obedience, then animating their loyalties: Yet the good vſe by his ouerlooking, ſetled their grudgings, and eſtabliſhed him in a floriſhing proſperitie; which though misfortune began to impugne by ſome ſlender reuolts, and the loſſe of the royall *Artaxata*; yet was fully reintigrated in a ſecond Mariage with the magnanimous

nimous *Talmiranda* Queene of *Aſsiria*; with whom hee ſpent the dayes of his yeares, and the yeares of his glory, glorying ſo much the more, becauſe Nature imparted her Bountie in many particulers, and Time made the vpſhot with expectable iſſue: For his Sonnes, *Artabazes* and *Olmus* ſhewed in their bringing vp great hope, and in their Fathers life Honourable gouernment: But the aged *Armenus* muſt ſatisfie his debt to the whole worlds creditor, & leaue them in the world like Waxe wrought with a warme hand ready for any impreſsion. At laſt, ſorrow ouerpaſſed the time of her ceremonious ſadneſſe, and the noble *Artabazes* without difficultie or repining, inueſted him ſelfe with the royalties of both *Armenias*, *Aſsiria*, and many Prouinces annexed to his Empire; and ſo two eſpeciall occaſions lifted vp their heades to make them ſelues knowne to the King: The one, a Celebration of his Mariage with *Euphamia* heyre of *Arach* and the three *Arabias*: The other, a forme of Gouernment, as well to maintaine his Fathers good proceedings, as to auoyde the ſuſpition of his owne weakeneſſe. In this, after extreamitie compelled a ſtrong Arme to ouerturne *Cleonidas* Houſe and confederates, euery one applawded his method and manner, and the people were carried with admiration toward him, the rather becauſe he aſſured, that the like iuſtice ſhould be diſtributed as well to the poore as rich, & made his owne example a *magnes* to draw forward the

ſteelieſt diſpoſition: But when by many particulars tending to a perfect eſtabliſhment, they found their peace and plentie to floriſh, then were they violently carryed with zeale, duty, and reuerence:, and truly (moſt mighty Princes) how euer ſome enuious hand did afterward caſt poyſon into his vertuous Spring, hee queſtionleſſe layed a ſure foundation, as your ſelues (if you will affoord mee a little patience) may witneſſe.

For the firſt thing he vndertooke, was the peopling a mighty Citty in the hart of his Realme, and erecting a ſumptuous Pallace in the middeſt of the Towne; that a reſeptacle of all ſorts, whom controuerſies compelled to tryall of Lawes, this ordained to eſpeciall perſons, whom honour incited to follow the Court. The Buildings not yet ſo much beautified with externall curiouſneſſe, as firme ſtatelineſſe: and the Pallace an inuention of glory and eternity: as hauing ſure walles, well proportioned largneſſe, ſtately lightes, eaſy Staires, great Entries, Princely Galleryes, conuenient Lodginges, wide and magnificent gates, aparted Offices, holſome walkes, ſweete Gardens, and dellicate Nurſeries: But what was this to the ſcituation & polliticke aduancement, the ground worke it ſelfe mounted two Furlonges higher then the other buildinges, and the metation finiſhed with the circuit of a Thouſand yardes, all contained within the deepeneſſe of a double Moat to which induſtry of man had drawne vp the vio-

lence

lence of many ſpringes, and the circomference of a triple Wall: yet did a ſtealing hill in ſuch ſoft vpriſing direct thee, that what with the brauery of the Marbell paued ſtreetes, and the comlineſſe of the euen built houſes waling foure great wayes of two hundred foot in breadth, eight hundred yardes in length from the Cittie gate to the firſt Pallace wall, thou wouldeſt haue been delighted in the iorny, and wondred with what pleaſure thou hadſt attained to ſuch height: thus was it ſtronge to with ſtand inſurrection, and in the mideſt for the better commaund of the Cittie, and eaſier prouiſion of the Pallace: like the heart enuironed with the body, and the nouriſher of life to all the members, they flouriſhing by the ſtrength of it, and that proſpering by the good order of them: Thus was it princely to reſuſcitate regarde, becauſe the ſtate of Maieſtie may not be confounded with communitie, but retaine ſpeciall reuerence. Thus was it named *Armamiranda* that the people in remembring their well affected *Prince* might conceiue he forgot not his much deſeruing parentes.

The next matter of import was to vnuaile the groſeneſſe of errors, and to reduce the gouernment to vniformitie, which conſiſting in the admittance of vertue and men louing vertue for vertues ſake, ſelected ſuch, whoſe integritie of life, and prudent directions warranted their worth for any purpoſe, as for follie either of her ſelfe loth-

ſome,

ſome, or bewitched with impietie abhominable, ſhe was altogeather baniſhed: the perſon whoſoeuer reiected for the imperfection, and the imperfection imputed rather to ſcorne of diſcipline, then naturall defect. This made the good goe forward in a well troden path, and the bad deſiſt from accouſtomed ill life, to which they were as it were directed, by reaſon ſo great a king made himſelfe exemplary by his owne vprightneſſe in iudgment, trueth of word, repoſedneſſe of ſpeech, chearefulneſſe of aſpect, ſecrecie of buſineſſe imparted, tolleration of inconueniences, reſolution of enterpriſes, heroyicke proceedinges in matters of Armes, conſtancie in affliction, and at all times reuerence towrad the Gods.

The officers of his houſe were ſuch, whoſe demeanour ſollicited Honour to remember their worth, or vertue beautified, that Honour before collated to them: yet was no man truſted to the libertie of his owne will, but receiued theſe inſtructions, to accknowledge the dignitie of a kinges perſon, to maintaine the ſecretes of ſtate and Court, to perpetrate no fact incurring the crime of Maieſty, to detract no time nor occaſion, which might ſet foorth the honour of his kingdome, to admit no vnworthy perſon, as an officer in Court, to hinder no mans aduancement, that had merited his place, and to depraue, nor depriue no complainant, till his cauſe were iudicially heard.

His

His prouidence appoynted a Hundred Senators, as Presidents of Prouinces dispersed through the Empire; to whom he committed Causes of incombrances, and Petitions of the people; not yet withdrawing him selfe from Controuersies of importance, nor forbidding to speake, whom Iniuries enforced; so that the Proude and Mighty were depressed, the Weake and Innocent comforted, and the Worthily regarded, confirmed.

The Priestes had charge to watch late, to rise early, to be spare of Diet, sober in speaking, patient in suffering, holy in conuersation, feruent in execution of Sacrifice, impartiall in reprehention, vntainted with priuate malice, no hoorders of Treasure, administers of wants, and keepers of their owne houses.

The Noble-men reziant in their Countries receiued these instructions, To haue their Houses stored with seruiceable Attendants, such as should neither be rash, quarrellers, lyers, blasphemers, gluttonous, gamesters, lecherous, or infamed: All which might be easily auoyded, or quickly preuented, if they them selues were milde, honest, sober, silent, patient, familiar, and deuoute: neither murmuring at the haunts of Brothers, Vncles, Coosins, and all other of their kin; nor denying to succour the necessities of poore Allies; or supplying the wantes of craning Strangers, whose enforced aduersitie deserued compassion.

The Iudges of the Kingdome, and Iustices of

each diuiſion were preſcribed rules touching themſelues, and had a commiſsion concerning others: touching themſelues in no ſort to be irregular, not lauiſh in tauntes, not arrogating vnproper titles: no vtterers of baſe reproches, no nouriſhers of impatience, no deriders of former inſtances, no deſpiſers of ciuillitie, nor others ignorance, and aboue all no deniers of iuſtice, nor ſtrangers to religion: concerning the people to make ſtronge weakneſſe, to commend courage, to prouide before enforcement, to chaſtiſe diſſolution, to ſuccour in time, to appeaſe ſedition, to obſerue conformitie, to cleare ſuſpition, to remedie heuineſſe, and to temper the momentary ioyes of proſperity.

The Gent: whoſe youth added luſtineſſe to deſire, and ſufficiency to willingneſſe, were aduiſed (with this caueat not to ſurpaſſe their degrees, or endanger their eſtates) to learne morallitie, as an ornament of the minde, and practiſe to be actiue for the enabling their bodies, either to Courtly paſtimes, as the Prince delighted, or to Warres neceſſitie, as the Common wealth enforced, whereby was put in vſe the running of raſes, the ſwiftneſſe of Footmanſhip, the wraſtling by armes, the breaking of Horſes, the ſleight of the Launce, the caſting of Dartes, the benefit of Slinges, the ſtroke of the Sword, the wearing of Armour, and the aduantage of other weapons: beſides the ſpare time of Countries repoſe was beſtowed

beſtowed in taming of Beaſtes by pollicy, force, deuiſe of Toyles, deceite of pittes, courſing of Dogges, or cunning of Horſmanſhip: In catching Fowles by counterfeit of Voyce, limings of buſh, placing of Ginnes, and exerciſe of Hauking: In ſnaring of Fiſh, by ſkill of Hooke, groping by hand, caſting the Net, opening the ſluce, or poyſoning the poole.

The Marchant was made acquainted to trauell abroad, to obſerue his Martes, to learne nauigation, to abſtaine from curioſity, to apply himſelfe to the place of his Trade, to exchange his commodities, to be certaine of his admittance, and to make difference in the choiſe of his Marchandiſe, according to the variety of Countries, each affording natures bountie, and the earthes plentie,

The Countri-man had theſe informations to till the ground, to Plough their ſeaſons, to Sow their Corne, to reape the bleſſings, to howſe their Stuffe, to order their Cattell, to Plant fruite, to ſow Acorns, to ſet Wood, to quicke Ditches, to draine Marſhes, to ſtocke Rootes, to caſt Pondes, to ſheare Sheepe, to trim Wooll, to weaue Cloth, to ſpinne Linnin, to dreſſe Hony, and to practiſe whatſoeuer labour might attaine to, or conceite imagine.

The Artificers were imployed to build ſtrongly, to Wall with ſtone, to ſtrengthen with Iron, to make watme with Glaſſe, to heaw Timber, to burne Brickes, to graue in Mettall, to caſt Armour,

to digge Mines, to ſearch Welles, to deuiſe for Shipes, to Tann Leather, and to furniſh townes: ſo that nothiug was left vndone, which belonged to the vſe of man, nor any thing done according not to reaſon and wiſdome.

Thus (noble Princes) flouriſhed the Common-wealth fiue *Luſtrums* togeather, vntill a wanton Securitie ſet on worke the worſt part of mans maliciouſneſſe, and made euery paltry Controuerſie rather a wicked Cauell, then a neceſſary Complaint: For in ſhort time, many Sycophants grew in the Common-wealth, (like ſome ſtrange Diſ-
" eaſe on an infected body, which either careleſneſſe
" or wilfulneſſe neglected to cure, vntill it became
" vlcerous and paſt redreſſe,) who neuer deſiſted
" from wrong information betwixt Neighbour and Neighbour; whereby they began in Diſpleaſure, and ended in Deſpight. Many ambitious ſpirits not able to beare out them ſelues, ſuffred Enuie to intangle one another with infinite outrages; ſo that if one Cauſe were determined, ten Actions were commenced: and many diueliſh Polliticians prying vnder-hand into the demeanors of men, either brought them within apparant Default, or ſuborned Witneſſe againſt them as, infringers of the Law; whereby euery man feared the conuerſation hee kept, and repining Hurliburlies in a manner mutinied againſt the permitters: but eſpecially when the King (growing mightie and rich, by reaſon diuers aduantages brought them

them within penaltie of ſome Statute and Forfetures,) became ſomewhat careleſſe in ſuch particulars, as before his Father and him ſelfe had ouerlookt: Then were vnder Officers left like vnskilfull Pilots in a dangerous Voyage; and there aroſe a very feare of confuſion amongſt the people, and lacked but a Head to draw them into action; which though it was not iuſtifiable in the wrong courſe ſo to bee vndertaken, yet was to be pitied in the reaſons, they inferred of redreſſe.

For ſpeaking the truth, the men in authority (eſpetially to whom the determining of controuerſies weare appoynted) not onely made benefit of the contentions of the people, but for the inſatiableneſſe of the benefit ſubuerted the firſt good intent of the lawes with quillites and detracting, being cunning indeed in nothing but detracting: beſides, touching priuat humours, this ridiculous croſſeneſſe chaunced, that where their owne originalls were for the moſt part baſe and obſcure, they in the ſcorne and inueighing againſt others, laboured yet to ennoble themſelues and their Children: Heere alſo was added the errors of higher officers euery one ſtriuing to aduance his friend and follower to ſuch places, which other men expected for deſert, or had wonne with time of ſeruice and attendancie; nor was this ſufficient, but the Common wealth was burthened with ſtrange impoſitiones, & diuers *Monopolies* brought

only benefite to ſome few perſons to the generall repining and complaint of the kingdome: For the better ſort ſtomached to ſee their honour checked and controuled: The men of Armes diſdained to be vſed like flowers, which are worne " while they keepe their ſcent, but caſt on the Dung- " hill neuer ſo little fading: The religious, like their " profeſsion, were rather eſteemed for a pollecie to keepe the people in awe, then in neceſſity to tremble at any iudgment to come: other Artiſts poore for lacke of practiſe, and therefore deſpiſed: the Countryman ſtoubborne, malitious, and yet outwardly humble enough, vnderſtanding but by others inſtructions, and a little ſoothed, brought into a Fooles Paradiſe: Only the Citiſen made good ſhift, by reaſon nauigation was to be maintained, and the entercourſe of people beſtowed their Mony amongſt them: yet deſiſted they not from ſiniſter meanes in gathering of wealth, and cruell extremitie in extorting aduantages, quickly ſuggeſted by baſe Brokers and petty Lawiers, who in the end made them reſemble that enui- " ous man, who wiſhed one of his eyes to be puld " out, ſo his companion might loſe both, which " wrought ſo great feare (by reaſon Conſcience accuſed them of ſo many faultes,) that they quickly fined themſelues, and when there was no ſuch thing meant, conſented to any impoſition to maintaine their liberties,

Thus grew the name of Lawyer and Officer more

more hatefull, then orderly execution: For their Pride and Wealth made them reſpect no body but themſelues; nor any thing, but their owne profite: Now when Pride and Couetouſneſſe were yoked togeather, like vntamed Heifers vnder the hand of an vnskilfull workeman, the Plough went quickly aſide with ill holding, and the Common-wealth grew full of Weedes for lacke of ſeaſonable tillage; which was a long time marked, and as long concealed by the Kings brother *Olmus*, who quickly apprehended the miſſlike of the people, and as quickly entertained ſome ſtrange hope in the apprehenſion; nor wanted their meanes and helpes to betray his conceite. For ſome induced him to take the defence of the people into his hands; others diſperſed Libels of defamation againſt the State: Some whiſpered againſt the King for not reforming theſe enormities; others dared to buzze in the peoples eares, that *Olmus* was of another diſpoſition; who in deed by this time, affecting a kind of popularitie, ſoothed each complaint with a pittifull behauiour toward many Suters, and fayre Promiſes to ſtand them in what ſtead he could: whereupon they flocked on heapes, and made interceſsion, hee would protect the Common-wealth, offering their liues and goods in profuſe manner vnto him.

Olmus the Kinges Brother beginneth an innouation.

When

Artabazes, ſtomaching his Brothers preſumption will not indure it, but Kills him in the Hurliburly.

WHen *Artabazes* vnderſtood the truth, and that *Euphamia* pleaded the hazard of her ſelfe and Children, he durſt not giue way vnto the miſchiefe, for there was no ſitting ſtill in hearing of Innouation, but publiſhed an apparant miſlike of theſe beginnings, and proclaimed againſt his Brother, for taking a wrong courſe and cauſe in hand: Now? becauſe the ielowſie ſprung from the hazard of his Crowne and dignity, it burſt foorth into flames of Deſpight; with which he ment to conſume him, had not ſome ſpeciall Coadiutors vnderpropped his ambition, wherby he was a while reſerued, like a man trateroufly aſiſted to the Top of an high tree, that his fall might be the greater, when they liſt to tumble him downe, for preſently diuers ciuell Warres enſued, which the people with great feare and charges maintained, and *Olmus* with extremitie and pollicy continued, as fully reſolued, that the fault now aggrauated would neuer admit reconſiliation: ſometime paſſed in this buſineſſe, wherin all mediocrity ouerpaſſed (both Country and Citties ſuffering the wrecke of the miſchiefe) wherupon a truce was taken, and the king ſeemed contented to haue their greeuances heard, for which a ſollemne meeting was appoynted at *Sagarena:* but *Artabazes* incenſed to be thus Coorb'd, as he thought, would by no meanes admitte of other Courſe, then his owne pleaſure, perſwading his great

great heart, or at leaſt his great heart perſwading him, that the authority of Kings conſiſted in commaunding, and not in being ouerruled by audatious diſobedience: with which quicke conceit he ouerſhott to diſpute or Reaſon the matter, and ſo by forcible entrie broke into the conſiſtory, with a ſtrong hand diſmiſſing the Counſell, amongſt whom finding his vnhappy brother, he made the caſe more Lamentable, becauſe he ſlew him himſelfe, and that the company in a place priuiledged were vnable to reuenge it, who yet performed, what they durſt, and durſt doe no more, then exclaime on the action.

Artabazes Killeth his brother Olmus.

But the king careleſſe of any mans repining, retyred his forces to the Principall fortreſſe, ſuſpecting what a mutinous Multitude might vnaduiſedly yeeld vnto, eſpecially hauing already entertained miſlike, and now confounded with new action of diſtruſtes, which accordingly came to paſſe. For the Cittie diſmayed with the report of *Olmus* death, and terrefied with the ſpeeches of diuers, who gaue out that the King ment preſently to ſacke it, miſdoubted their owne ſaftie, and were vrged to Muſter their forces to ſaue their liues, which *Geſtarius* incited them vnto (a Minnion of the ſlaughtered Prince) and with a ſlender inuectiue quickely exaſperated their diſpleaſure. But heere Fortune laughed, firſt to ſee a man of iudgement deceiued in an idle choyce: and then the world bewitched to be caried out of

The ſtory of Geſtarius.

the ſmooth path of Obedience by a blind guide into the ſtony and craggy ſtreights of Innouation. For concerning the man, hee was in great credite about *Olmus*; yet neither birth allowing the fauour of a Court, nor education meriting any extraordinaie liking, onely readineſſe of Lip-labour adioyning ſome outward pleaſantneſſe to many abrupt ſpeaches (of them-ſelues, neither in another gracious, nor from another allowable) made the ouercredulous Prince continue his loue; becauſe hee had begun his liking, and admit the perſon for pleaſing his fancie, loth to reiect ſo great hope, as his cunning perſwaded; and vnwilling to bring his firſt Iudgement in queſtion, which had ſo much ouerruled him. Touching his Action? as ſoone as ſilence was pittifully entreated, hee ſeemed to excruciate him ſelfe with ſorrow, and began to vtter his minde, yet could not for deepe ſighs, nor ſigh long for many teares; which proceeding from affection, detained him awhile in ſome abruptneſſe, till at laſt the ſtrength of his deſire to Reuenge, gaue libertie to the tongue thus to diſpute.

"O infortunate people (ſayd hee) euen after ſo
"long goodneſſe with the ſurfet of the ſame vnfor-
"tunate, now are you inuited to a ſower Banqnet;
"in which neither courtious entertainement allow-
"eth a welcome, nor holſome Diet ſatisfaction;
"vnleſſe odious Preſumption, arrogant Contempt,
"wilfull Negligence, vnexpected Oppreſsion, tyra-

nous

nous Slaughters, and vnnaturall Murders, be the "
fare you attend, and the Dellicates you hope after: "
For naught elſe affoordeth the Diſhes of this "
courſe, or the courſes of this Feaſt, conſidering "
your glory (Oyee that were proude in the fru- "
ition of ſuch glory) is quite extinguiſhed; but in "
whom? in *Olmus*; ô princely *Olmus* is ſlaine: "
But where? in the Pallace temple ſacred to the "
people, and ſanctified to the Gods: But how? by "
force of Armes, and furie of Tyrants: But by "
whom? by blood thirſty *Artabazes*, who with "
his owne hands chaſed vs from the place, and "
ſlew his Fathers Sonne in the Temple; which as "
I cannot declare without griefe, ſo I wiſh not let "
paſſe without redreſſe, conſidering you impor- "
tune to haue the gouernment worthy your obe- "
dience; and not to remaine in a continuall feare of "
your ruine: For what ſhall wee expect, when the "
Common-wealth hath been made the Tennisball "
of Fortune, and toſſed, as his violence inforced? "
When the Complaints of the people haue been "
derided, and irregular wilfulneſſe ſet on foote ma- "
nie diueliſh ſtratagems; as for the Warres, which "
hath made vs all ſmart, they haue been but counted "
paſtimes, and the meanes to disburthen him of ill "
willers: But concerning our ſelues, How ſhall we "
that be Strangers, liue without diſmay, when hee "
which was his Mothers Sonne died without re- "
morce? Let my very Enemies, whom yet I would "
not haue enemies to their Country, looke about "

" with the eyes of zeale and diſcretion, and then tell
" mee, if the Kingdome thus diſtracted, ſtand not in
" need of better direction, when they ſee in all ſtrong
" compacted Eſtates, either Wiſe men be aduanced
" to authoritie, or men in authoritie endeauour to
" be Wiſe? Nor are we ſo ſlauiſhly bound to the
" ſucceſsion of a Monarchy, not yet confirmed with
" eighty yeares memorie, to ſubmit to priuat inſati-
" atneſſe, rather then prouide for publicke good.
" What ſhall I ſay? I proteſt, neither old rooted Ma-
" lice, nor any priuate Diſpleaſure of my owne, gi-
" ueth this euidence: Or as the ill willer may in-
" ferre, perpetrateth a crime; but the dangers you
" remaine in (moſt honourable *Armenianus*) to ſee
" your Priuiledges taken from you, your Goods diſ-
" pearſed, your ſelues made ſlaues, your Wiues ra-
" uiſhed, your Daughters deflowred, and your Cit-
" ties ſet on fire, (as if your names were to be for-
" gotten on earth) compelleth this aggrauation:
" For the Head corrupted, ſuffreth the Body to pe-
" riſh, and the Minde to be contagious: a Spring
" poyſoned, diſſolueth the venom into the running
" Streame; and the Prince lifted vp like the head of
" a polliticall body, either of him ſelfe wicked, or
" of as wicked as him ſelfe mis-ledde, quickly rui-
" neth the flouriſhing'ſt Kingdome. Then may
" the Subiects wiſh amiſſe, becauſe they hate, and
" hate in that they can receiue no good: which
" ſeeing wee haue ſuch pregnant proofe of, let vs in
" time, either alter this vntoward beginning, or

depoſe

depoſe our new beginning Tyrant: for in our caſe, wee ſorry not that good men doe die; but tremble that the vicious doe liue.

No ſooner had his rebellious eloquence ſoothed the conceites of the multitude, but with a mutinous hurliburly (not vnlike a raging Sea ſwelling ouer ſome ſmall defence, which caryeth before it what ſo euer ſtoppeth his courſe; or a boyſterous Winde, whoſe violence hurleth downe the greateſt and higheſt Buildings) did they thronge on heapes againſt the place, whither ſafety had withdrawne *Artabazes*; and ſeeing the Ports guarded, were the more enraged, becauſe reſiſted; yea altogether out of patience, as finding a likelihood of *Geſtarius* inuectiue, the moſt of them not knowing whither they went, nor aduiſed what to doe; yet becauſe they would bee doing, did indeed what was not to be done: Some crying it ſurpaſſeth Homicide, and no way to be excuſed; others wiſhed their ſilence, and inferred there might be a cauſing circomſtaunce: Some whiſpered the danger of delay, and that there was opportunitie to reuenge all their wronges; others gaue an aſſault, vainely preſuming on the glory of the exployte: Some thought it too much outrage, and therfore ſeemed halfe angry; others of a more dangerous courage, fearing a ſlackneſſe in the deuiſion, were the angrier at their anger: Some gaue a caueat to be aduiſed, leaſt the King ſhould preuaile;

others made vse of that doubt, that no Pardon would euer be graunted, and therefore as good purchase their Peace by force, or make it a generall trespasse.

Thus vnstayed hastinesse, the very principall part of trayterous insurrection, deuided their wits, and debarred all motions of alleageance, causing them, which intended to doe well, to practise what was amisse, and such as ment amisse to continue in tenn times worse: so that *Artabazis* was amased at the wretched vprore, and in a manner confounded to see such a concurtencie of mischiefe; but when he perceiued their outrage bent to entrap his life, and that they had begun a worke of great trouble, he summoned the best aduise he could of preuention, which concluded to winne time, the father of contraries, and by secret flight to preuent the present fury: reasonning thus, either their owne affayres would deuide them to their houses, or the charge in maintaining the Army would proue to combersome, or the Queene hauing strongly fortefied her selfe in *Belcania*, would raise and encrease her power, or the neighbour amity of *Media* would sufficiently reenforce his Army: this his eldest sonne *Anzitemus* much vrged, because *Artabanus* the *Median* King was many wayes tyed in honour vnto him, and to this did they all condiscend, making that night a sudden alarum and with a gallant sally quickely winning the Hauen with the Ships within, the

Riuer

Riuer, wherein no man reſiſting (for the King commaunding, and was now able to be obeied) they as quickely embarked themſelues. *Artabazes leaueth Armenia.*

But heere you might haue deciphered the operation of baſe cowardiſe, and gallant vallure; this of ſuch vertue, that each daunger was as ſoone ouerpaſſed, as attempted: that of ſuch changes, that the hurlyburly amongſt themſelues flue more with diſorder, then the Enemie with aduantage: For as *Anzitemus* gaue the on ſet, and that the king followed to ſecond him, whole Lanes were made through ſome few companies new riſen, and the ſuddenneſſe ſuffered none to riſe, who were otherwiſe ouertaken: beſides, the night encreaſed the feare, the feare a confuſion, & a confuſion a moſt lamentable ſlaughter, which the King not regarded (as ſuppoſing Iuſtice had taken his cauſe in hand) but thanking Fortune for the opportunitie, left them amazed at the accident, and ſetled him ſelfe to the diſpatch of his iourney.

By this time ſome better aduiſed, then the reſt, gathered togeather the diſpearſed Forces: but when the light of their Vnderſtanding had vnited it ſelfe to the light of the Morning, and that they ſaw ſo pittious a ſpectacle, and knew the King was eſcaped, then followed another alteration: For the vnſetled multitude nere diſputing on the firſt cauſe, condemned the preſent miſchiefe, and began to enueigh againſt the inchantment of that exorciſt *Geſtarius*, which had ſo ſeduced them:

But

but when they ouerlooked their damages, and conceiued the matter, as if Iuſtice had ſent them to the houſe of Correction, then grew the terror amongſt themſelues more, then their courages againſt their enemies, none now being enemies, but ſuch as enterpriſed the defence of *Geſtarius*, who baſe in very baſeneſſe it ſelfe allowed each reproch without Coulour or excuſe, and ſuffered the wrecke of their rage with the loſſe of his owne life which done *Pleios* a chiefe man amongſt them aduiſed to ſubmit to the Queene *Euphamia*, whom in all actions they had found a worthy patterne of Princelyneſſe and vertue, and would not now degenerate, conſidering *Geſtarius* had already receiued the guerdon of a Traytor, and no man remayned, but trembled to immagin, what the end would haue been, if the King had miſcaried.

Geſtarius death.

This euery one applauded; and a preſent ſubmiſſion made interceſſion for a pardon, but by reaſon of her feare of *Artabazes*, it receiued not full life, yet ſhee accorded, what euer chanced, to make their peace, and they encouraged with her Princely promiſe diſperced themſelues, whereupon ſhe ſent forth a Pinace, as a meſſenger of theſe glad tidinges to finde out *Artabazes*, which made ſuch haſt, that within three dayes it ouertooke them ouertaken with ſuch ill ſucceſſe, as if miſchiefe and deſtruction indeed had called a diſmall counſell to croſſe a man,

For

FOr (moſt Excellent Princes) euen when they thought misfortune weary of her tyrany, they deſcried a Fleet at Sea, the arch Pirat *Cleonidas*, whom the Miniſters of report had certefied of *Artabazes* troubles, and mingling many lyes with ſome truth, perſwaded, that moſt men deſired his returne and aduancement, to which his former diſcontentments, and preſent meanes of Reuenge ſeemed to flatter him, that if the worſt fell out, he might ioyne with *Olmus*, and ſo make the ſame Water that draue the Mill, to drowne the Mill by his comming, cauſing the Brothers ſo to weaken one another, that at laſt he might be warranted to depreſſe the ſtrongeſt party: This aduiſed him to furniſh his Nauy, and hearing the voyce of the Windes ſound comfort vnto him, made vſe of the time, & ſet forward with ſpeed, vntill he encountred *Artabazes* Sailing into *Media*, and thought Fortune very liberall in beſtowing ſuch a benefit vpon him: For now the choiſe of reconciliation or Reuenge was expoſed, but Reuenge ſounded like Muſicke in his cruell eares, as maintained with the life of a more cruell heart, wherupon without parlee, or other amplifieing manner of defiance (more then that he exclamed, how the fauour of the Gods had ſent *Cleonidas* to cry quittance with the ſonne of *Armenus*) he preſently aſſaulted them. *The ſtory of Cleonidas & Artabazes.*

But when the name of *Cleonidas*, wicked *Cleonidas*

nidas, (yea in his wickednesse dishonorable *Cleonidas*) was vnderstood of *Artabazes*, neuer came vallure to be so miserably checked (as if the sound of *Cleonidas* had proceeded from the Trumpet of death) for a sudden stilnesse (far be it from any man to call it a feare) made such a *Metamorphosis*, that when there seemed greatest need of an emboldding courage, then began a misdoubt of death warranting sorrow, which departed not, till a strong party of sighes and teares disproportioned his magnanimitie: at last he remembred himselfe, and seing his sonne *Anzitemus*, as it were ouerlooking him, caught hold of his Arme, and thus spake:

" O the strength of my life? O my *Anzitemus?*
" Be not dismayde at this extasie, nor impute the
" titell of Cowardise to the father of such a sonne,
" but the only opinion, & the now examination of the
" same, which I conceiued of the wise *Dermastro*,
" who long since in a greefe-working sadnesse as-
" sured, that *Cleonidas* would be omninous vnto me
" hath ouerswaied that allacrytie, which I once sup-
" posed no mischance should distemper: yet I pro-
" test, this is not troublesome in regard of my selfe,
" but for thee, whom I haue doublie and irreco-
uerably betrayed and abused: But necessitie made a breach of his speeches: For *Anzitemus* (answering no otherwise, then liue *Artabazes* in despight of *Cleonidas*?) was enforced to the fight, and so disposed his Ships, that *Cleonidas* determining to Grapple, thought to discouer some aduan-

aduantage by Wheeling about, and turning his Sailes. And as when two mightie Rammes enraged with the ſmart of well inforced ſtroakes quickly part themſelues, and to the vnexperienced make a Cowardly retreat, butindeed to meete againe with ſorer fury: ſo acted *Cleonidas* his part, for what with animating of ſome, terrefieing of others, and his owne example he ſet forward againe, and becircled the ſhip, wherein *Artabazes* was with foure greater: Now who had ſeene the peereleſſe King for his worthyneſſe could not, but haue thought valure rightly beſtowed, ſuch was the ſlaughter he made, ſuch was the confuſion, which followed: The ſhipe full of dead Carkaſes, full of dying men, full of wounded fighters, himſelfe beſtowing no blow, but like a Meſſenger of Reuenge and ouerpreſſed with number like a Miniſter of rage, as for the reſt, the valiant in their deaths outfaced death, the coward ſaw his ſhame rewarded either with miſerable ſlaughter, or ſlauiſh Captiuitie: the Ships were ſuncke and diſmembred,and *Anzitemus* began to be ouermaſtred fighting with *Cleonidas*, which when *Artabazes* perceiued, his impatience was ſo great, that Terror it ſelfe might haue beene diſmayed at the diſtemprature: For a ſtrange fury began a ſtrange action ouerthrowing all reſiſters, making ſome Armeleſſe, ſome Headleſſe, ſome Liueleſſe & deſiſted not,till he approched the place where his ſonne fought, and diſplacing him began

IRREGU
PAGINAT

ſpight of *Cleonidas*) was enforced to the fight, and ſo diſpoſed his Ships, that *Cleonidas* determining to Grapple, thought to diſcouer ſome aduan-

EGULAR
INATION

gan a ſtrange action caſting away all feares,
making ſome Armeleſſe, ſome Headleſſe, ſome
Liueleſſe & deſiſted not, till he approched the place
where his ſonne fought, and diſplacing him be-

nidas, (yea in his wickednesse dishonorable *Cleonidas*) was vnderstood of *Artabazes*, neuer came vallure to be so miserably checked (as if the sound of *Cleonidas* had proceeded from the Trumpet of death) for a sudden stilnesse (far be it from any man to call it a feare) made such a *Metamorphosis*, that when there seemed greatest need of an emboldding courage, then began a misdoubt of death warranting sorrow, which departed not, till a strong party of sighes and teares disproportioned his magnanimitie: at last he remembred himselfe, and seing his sonne *Anzitemus*, as it were ouerlooking him, caught hold of his Arme, and thus spake: "O the strength of my life? O my *Anzitemus?* "Be not dismayde at this extasie, nor impute the "titell of Cowardise to the father of such a sonne, "but the only opinion, & the now examination of the "same, which I conceiued of the wise *Dermastro*, "who long since in a greefe-working sadnesse as-"sured, that *Cleonidas* would be omnineus vnto me "hath ouerswaied that allacrytie, which I once sup-"posed no mischance should distemper: yet I pro-"test, this is not troublesome in regard of my selfe, "but for thee, whom I haue doublie and irreco-uerably betrayed and abused: But necessitie made a breach of his speeches: For *Anzitemus* (an-swering no otherwise, then liue *Artabazes* in de-spight of *Cleonidas*?) was enforced to the fight, and so disposed his Ships, that *Cleonidas* deter-mining to Grapple, thought to discouer some aduan-

aduantage by Wheeling about, and turning his Sailes. And as when two mightie Rammes enraged with the ſmart of well inforced ſtroakes quickly part themſelues, and to the vnexperienced make a Cowardly retreat, butindeed to meete againe with ſorer fury: ſo acted *Cleonidas* his part, for what with animating of ſome, terrefieing of others, and his owne example he ſet forward againe, and becircled the ſhip, wherein *Artabazes* was with ſoute greater: Now who had ſeene the peereleſſe King for his worthyneſſe could not, but haue thought valure rightly beſtowed, ſuch was the ſlaughter he made, ſuch was the confuſion, which followed: The ſhipe full of dead Carkaſes, full of dying men, full of wounded fighters, himſelfe beſtowing no blow, but like a Meſſenger of Reuenge and ouerpreſſed with number like a Miniſter of rage, as for the reſt, the valiant in their deaths outfaced death, the coward ſaw his ſhame rewarded either with miſerable ſlaughter, or ſlauiſh Captiuitie: the Ships were ſuncke and diſmembred, and *Anzitemus* began to be ouermaſtred fighting with *Cleonidas*, which when *Artabazes* perceiued, his impatience was ſo great, that Terror it ſelfe might haue beene diſmayed at the diſtemprature: For a ſtrange fury began a ſtrange action ouerthrowing all reſiſters, making ſome Armeleſſe, ſome Headleſſe, ſome Liueleſſe & deſiſted not, till he approched the place where his ſonne fought, and diſplacing him be-

gan the Combate himselfe, which continued in such a fashion, that *Anzitemus* was deuided from them, though his handyworke had wrought the Miracles amongst the company: at last *Artabazes* (as angry, that it stood him in no more stead) threw away his sword, and closing with *Cleonidas* supposed with maine strength to throw him ouerboord.

Heere began a new contention, as if destruction ment to shew the beholders variety, but after many windinges, shouings, and turnings both strong, both cunning, the Pirat was ouerthrowne, but not with that quickneſſe, but *Artabazes* fell two, compelled by the fast holding one another: thus lay, they both breathing, both fainting, till *Cleonidas* awaking the very secrets of mischiefe, and perceiuing the neereneſſe of his owne Ship gaue directions to tumble them togeather therin, which whether they neglected thinke (Noble Princes) when it was as quickly done as spoken, and the Enemie to manhood- commaunded to vngrapple, and so to depart with their gotten Prize, which though *Anzitemus* striued to intercept, yet Fortune vnwilling to his destruction infringed his desiers, and left him dying in seeing his father so captiued: and Tenn times dying in the succorleſſe helpe remaining: nothing with holding his owne entrance into the house of death, but hope of *Cleonidas* death, which very shortly he had time enough to meditate on, though slender meanes

Cleonidas carieth Artabazes away prisoner.

to

to execute: For when his eyes retutned from their daſtardly flight, as they termed it (becauſe they might as well haue Triumphed ouer him) to regarde his preſent eſtate, and that he found of ſixteene Saile & two Thouſand men but two barckes, and fiftie eight in ſaftie, ſuppoſe he remained rather not knowing how to dye, then wiſhing to liue: at laſt the life breathing Counſell of *Ardmeio*, faythfull *Ardmeio* recaled his ſpirits, and thus diſpelled the comberſome enemies of courage: Honorable *Anzitemus* leauing further ampliation of Titles, let deuine reſolutions be rather reuerenced, then diſputed on; let hũaine actions be rather accounted the ſubiects of change, then Anchor hold of perpetuitie; let vertue be ſtill it ſelfe rather to redreſſe miſchiefe, then maintaine proſperity; Let time haue her allowance, and what we ſuppoſe vnlikly, that will diſpoſe vnlookt for: This I am bolder to inferre, becauſe without doubt a ſecret influence doth none ouerrule, and might in ſome perſones effect demiſſneſſe, but in you, where the better part remaineth vnaſſaulted, which is magnanimity, let that apply and imploy it ſelfe to redreſſe, wherin no doubt as your conſtancie ſhall appeare, your ſuccour ſhall approch: proceed therefore in your iorney to *Artabanus?* Whoſe ayde may ſet you forward into *Perſia*, or wherſoeuer *Cleonidas* is ſupported: or if you pleaſe you may returne into *Armenia*, where I am ſure, if you will take the protection of the Kingdome into your hands, you ſhall

be able with loue and leasure to raise sufficient power to plucke *Artabazes* out of the Iawes of destruction.

But *Anzitemus* vtterly neglected, yea in a manner despised the motion of returning, protesting neuer to returne, vnlesse *Artabazes* did returne; or both ouerturne their liues right to her contraries vsurpation, and therefore tooke the other course of going to *Artabanus*; where he was without scruple or diffidence entertained. But (most royall Princes) Misfortune followed like a a shadow; for wee found the Noble king in such distresse as there seemed no hope of our recouery: Then belike (quoth the Duke) you were a party in this businesse? Great Duke, I was; and to bee plaine, am that vnfortunate *Anzitemus* the first borne of *Artabazes*, vnfortunate in being that I am; but ten times vnfortunate in not being at all.

Montanus discouereth himselfe to be the Sonne of Artabazes.

Montanus hauing discouered himselfe to be King Artabazes Sonne by the name of Anzitemus maryeth Erizaca.

O Thou life of the World! thou glorious Sunne, (quoth *Ligernio* Prince of *Bactriana*) Who hath not heard of *Artabazes* misfortune? Who hath not heard of *Artabanus* succesſe? Who hath not heard of *Persias* troubles? Who hath not heard of *Anzitemus* victories? With that, hee arose to imbrace him: Nor were the rest of the Princes so vnsatisfied in opining his Discourse, as once to suppose there were errours in the same; but likewise arose, as if indeed the fame of his actions, and greatnesse of his birth, had

had read them a leſſon of reſpect and reuerence: Whereupon *Ligornio* tooke the King *Zalby* and the Duke aſide, and gaue them notice, whom Fortune as malignant had thus turmoyled, whom Vertue as predominant had thus conſerued, whom Fame as triumphant had thus eterniſed; which *Rugio* (hauing long ſince receiued the deuiſion of report) willingly acknowledged and therefore with true Honour welcommed him by the name of vertuous and victorious *Anzitemus*: then followed the King, then the reſt: laſt of all, as the Iudges before led him to receiue the Prize from *Brizaca*, they now conducted him to be receiued Priſeleſſe of *Brizaca*, alleaging that neuer deuine fauour could open the Treaſure houſe of bountie vnto them, as now to behold the Pallace of *Fortona* the place for truth and ſtrangeneſſe to diſplay the enſigne of admiration, for loue and beautie to March vnder the ſtandard of vertue, for vallure and magnificence to flowriſh with the Coulours of Maieſty, for Riches and contentment to conduct the Vantgard of delight, and heere to appoynt the *RendeZuous*, as if they had concluded a Triumph of happineſſe; The Gods therefore forbid (quoth *Rugio*) that any default of mine ſhould intercept your deſires: loue him then *BriZaca*? Loue her then *Anzitemus*? and long may you liue to loue, and not liue, except you loue one another.

Great was the grace affoorded *Rugio* for this: great

great was the ioy the Kings and Princes made for this, great was the amaze the Court shewed for this, great was the applause the people yeelded for this: but when the royall *Brizaca* seased once againe on her comfort, and that her happinesse extended in the highest degree of equality, shee thought it inequality in the highest degree not to glory in his loue, so firmely before incorporated, & so fortunately now confirmed; therefore she willed a publicke solemnisation of a new contract: nor seemed the euer-willing *Trezoboro* to repine at his Sisters choyce, but made vp the defects of the consort with his plawditie. By this time, the household Officers couered for the Feast, and the Trumpets sound gaue warning of a new worke so the obseruations of good Customes adiorned further conference, and with seuerall delights posted the seuerall howers of that day; *Rugio* striuing to set foorth his owne greatnesse, and the Princes much pleased to receiue so full contentment: Yet the youthfull *Trezoboro* and diuers others, to whom the report of strange aduentures seemed instigations to as strange performances in themselues, were vnsatisfied in the broken off Discourse of *Anzitemus* proceedings, vntill *Ligornio* to doe them a pleasure; and least *Anzitemus* should be too sparing, speaking of him selfe, (but especially to allow him opportunitie with the much desired *Brizaca*, to whom he might at leasure, yeeld accompt of his heretofore well imployed time) condiscended

Anzitemus and Brizaca maryed.

discended the next day to finish his Story: which *Anzilemus* gratified as a kindnesse, and so left the Prince to pensell on the Table of his renowne.

Liocrnio proceedeth with the History of Artabazes, & beginneth with the story of Artabanus and Astiages.

AFter the ciuill Warres of *Persia* (quoth the Prince) had made the Seruants of *Bellona* wearie in executing her bloody Commandements, a pacification was effected in the election of a man fitte for the gouernment (which at last, though *Artabanus* King of *Media*, a Prince of sufficient power, and more sufficient direction, was nominated) yet fell to the share of *Astiages*, by reason of his blood, education, and commorance amongst them. This *Artabanus* tooke in ill part, and was amongst the *Medians* a reputed contempt; nor wanted there such, which inferred, that the scorne was greater in the refusall after they had by their Embassadors vrged it, then if the matter had neuer been proposed: Of this sort, the especialest man was *Medormus*, who well hoped for the Crowne of *Media*, if *Artabanus* obtayned the other: whereupon an ambitious Counsell of Warre concluded reuenge, and confirmed the manner by inuasion, the rather because *Adelphus* Duke of *Austrasia* offered the disbursing of great summes of his owne, and tooke vpon him the conduct of the Army, which consisting of foure-score thousand foote, ten thousand Horse, and foure

thousand Camels for burden, made him presume, that *Astiages* in the incheation of his Peace, was not able to raise sufficient forces to withstand him, considering his Souldiers hauing the prey and spoyle of a Country (worthy any title) exposed vnto them, seemed impatient at restraint; and indeed performed their duties in the best manner; "as when you see a costly Prize erected at the end of "a Goale, and the runners striuing to make it the "Trophe of their victorie: For at their first entrance they began with subuerting of Houses, felling of Wood, fiering and cutting of Corne, dryuing of Cattle, ensconsing of Wayes, and making of Forts: But *Astiages* vnwilling that the Earth should bee vnfurnisht of her golden Apparell, which already the vngentile multitude had presumed to disrobe; and forecasting, least the best part of his Country should be the Seate of the Warre, came forward in person, with a full and well furnisht Armie, compounded of all those Souldiers, which in the ciuill Warres were vnnaturally caryed against one another; but now finding the sweetnesse of a little Peace, determine absolutely for the honour of *Persia*, and within seuen dayes made the tryall of Swordes warrant their affection to their King and Country.

Thus both the Armies are driuen to a mighty encounter, not vnlike to a dusty Path dauncing "to and fro as obedient to the Winde, till an extra- "ordinary violence whirleth the vppermost molde, that

that a man would wonder, how one blaſt ſhould »
ſo ſoone deuide ſo great an Heape; by which vn- »
friendly greeting, the one party hath great cauſe »
to lament; the other ſmall reaſon to triumph: The
Earth bled for woe, conſidering the effuſion which
was made, made her change colour, and receiue
vnnaturall moyſture: The Beaſtes whoſe ſeruice
conſiſted in the skilfull managing of the Rider,
lay diſmembred, the men whoſe cunning was
countermaunded by vnfortunate aduantage fell
diſmounted: The Captiue ſuppoſing the law of
Armes would haue ſerued his turne, is ſuddainely
ſtab'd, the Triumpher is ouertaken with an others
weapon in his owne bowels, ere the Blade is out
of the others body: One-while the *Perſians* troope
with applauſe of preuayling, anone the *Medians*
ſhoute with ioy of victorie, as when you ſee a migh-
tie preſſe of people, ſometime ſhouing forward
with a murmuring noyſe into that corner, ſome-
time backward into this place, and many times
confuſed with the cry of the company: To con-
clude, what Stratagem diſorder of enrage euer
performed was now for the manner dangerous,
and the number lamentable: For had not the
night haſted to decide the quarrell, ſome other
Company muſt haue ended it, conſidering it
would ſoone haue ended them. Thus are the
Perſians retyred with great damage, and the *Me-*
dians entrenched with ſmall gaines; who ſlender-
ly mooued with this defeature, are not at all re-

mooued from their first wilfulnes, but determine, that new supplyes shall make another tryall to pay their double losses: So haue I seene an vnskilfull "Archer loosing one Arrow, to shoote another af- "ter to find it, till taking great paines in the search, "he like a foole returneth with the losse of both: Whereupon *Adelphus* sent *Poligambus* into *Media*, who certified *Artabanus* of the vnfortunate disaster, extolling indeed aboue truth, the force of the Enemie, to deminish their owne shame in their ouerthrow; but this newes was not so ill of it selfe, as in the effect it procured. For *Medormus* taking aduantag of these particulars, that the losse in *Persia* would busie them heere with forren occasions: that the supplying them would much trouble the kingdome: that the absence of the kings best friends gaue him oportunitie to strike the Iron, while it was hott; and that his owne abillytie seemed euery way strong enough for the attempt, made a strange, cruell, and Trayterous reuolt; wherein without doubt a prosperous beginning had been sustained with vnpropper succesſe, if by the ariuall of *Anzitemus* the maske of despaire had not been taken off, and a new Countenance of hope smiled on the discomforted King, discomforted not so much in displeasure of his owne affaires, as in the despight of *Medormus* vnkindnesse, who had so kindly been beholding vnto him, as your selues may thus witnesse.

Arta-

Artabanus now raigning, was ſonne of *Artabanus Otanes*, who had the title of a father doubled in enioying alſo a Daughter called *Gliranda*, & his ioy redoubled in thoſe giftes of nature, beautie, and Maieſtie, which excelled in her, and the rather excelled, as yeelding to the gouernment of vertue and obedience, vntill ſome violent humour willingly lifting ope the Gate of ambytion made a ſtrange loue, the vnnaturall cauſe of a ſtrange hate. For ſomewhat pleaſed in the gallant youthfulneſſe, and well deſeruing towardlyneſſe of this *Medormus*, ſonne of *Ceſtus* brother to *Artabanus* the father, after many circumſtances and endeuors to purchaſe her liking, ſhe admitted rather with a gennerall curteſie, then any particuler affection, his diſcourſes and deſiers: but when his loue was pleaded with reſolution, that neither father nor brother ſhould be any obſtacle for her head to be impaled with the Crowne of *Media*, yrging his right indeed by being the elder brothers ſonne, a matter long ſince (as ſhee partly heard in queſtion, and determined otherwiſe) neuer was vertue ſo out of countenance: For admitting his reaſons and inducements, ſhe rann Arme in Arme with him in the race of a violent Treaſon: yea ſuch an impreſſion had the expectation of her glory made, that in the infant time of her abortiue proceedings ſhe ſtomached leſſe reuerence, then what is accouſtomed to Queenes,

The ſtory of Medormus and Gliranda.

and was not ashamed to proclaime her now title, and defiance against her Father: nay more, after the discouery, and that they were preuented, she dared to exasperat the kings displeasure with a kinde of impudencie, who enraging to see such offenders past shame, commaunded the prerogatiue of Maiestie to proceed against them, wherby without question they had both lost their liues, as before they had done their loyalties, if her brother *Artabanus* now raigning had not importuned a hard returning mercy: yet could not the father so passe ouer the vnkindnesse: For he presently entertained all the Ministers of rage and discontentment, by whom he was quickly miscaried to the house of sickenesse, wherin only able to assure his sonne, that Kings permitte neither concurrent nor Competitor, with a life fainting farewell, he bad him remember his father, and looke to himselfe.

Now encreased new troubles, because *Medarmus* and *Gliranda* set on worke new Treasons, as perceiuing one only obstacle to debarre their progresse to the dignitie, which made them contriue to remoue it, wherein they went somewhat cunningly to worke, causing a good mother to bring foorth a bad Childe, and vnder Coulour of an Honorable exployte to incite *Artabanus* to the inuading of *Persia*, not doubting but he might miscary in the danger, or they by his absence haue conuenyency to reuolt: but when the kings sending

ſending *Adelphus* had thus diſappointed them, the very deſpight diſcouered, that there is no confidence to be attributed to a reconſiled enemie, who like the Serpent of *Nilus* came fawning, creeping, yea and ſhed teares, till he was able to reach his prey, and then Murdred him without remorſe, & ſo wrought with them from acknowledging a life ſauing benefit, that they once againe attempted a death working *Cataſtrophe*: a *Cataſtrophe* I may well terme it; as hauing a double reference both to the king, and themſelues: For ſoothed, or rather betraied to this opportunitie of *Artabanus* forces ouerthrowne in *Perſia*, they begann an inteſtine broyle and innouation in *Media*, which ſhewed the countenance of ſuch miſerable towardlyneſſe, that the king was enforced to fortefie himſelfe in the Cittie of *Abadod*, where commonly his Court was kept, and the people were euer carryed with a Zeale toward him: neither did *Medormus* proſecute him, and within ſeauen dayes after *Anzitemus* atiuall (to whom for the ſtrangneſſe and croſſe variety the King imparted both the one and the other Warre) miſerably beſeiged him.

When *Anzetemus* perceiued to what tryall his patience was enforced, he repined at the troubles, rather then was troubled with any repining, becauſe his owne determination for *Artabazes* deliuery was procraſtinated, and he himſelfe muſt needes be engaged for *Artabanus* releife: yet making

making vertue of necessitie, and willing to affright Conceit with some imployment, hee offred the king two especiall iewels of his treasurie, Direction, and Encouragement, that in regard of his louing Citizens, whom hee meant to protect: this in respect of his disloyall Subiectes, against whom hee determined to proceed; whereupon a summons brought them to hearken after a Parlee, and *Arzabanes* out of the Window of a Port, thus deliuered his minde.

" I am gladd (louing, and yet disordred louing
" Friends) that I speake to such, who by their quiet at-
" tention make shew at the first, of wisedome & obe-
" dience; I will therefore without euasion, or chal-
" lenging this vnkinde and vnnaturall bearing of
" Armes against your King, come to the purpose in
" deed: If then my defects and extremities haue
" been so narrowly searcht into, that I seeme vnwor-
" thy to enioy my Inheritaunce, I was neuer so vn-
" tractable to reiect good counsaile and aduise: or if
" they haue been so vnnaturally vrged against mee,
" that you can not beare the burden without a re-
" uolt; yet you might orderly haue discouered your
" griefes, and desired reformation: for I protest be-
" fore the Reuenget of all Treasons, that I ioyne
" with you in well wishing to haue Goodnesse flou-
" rish, Prudence direct, Fortitude protect, Iustice
" controule, and Temperance moderate: Or if any
" better course might like a quiet working Potion,
" be administred for the health of this Politicall
body;

body, the patient is not ſo diſtempred to caſt away himſelfe: But if priuate grudges haue led you out of the ſmooth paths of reaſon to the ragged and ſtony ſtreightes of paſſion, returne for ſhame, leaſt your fooliſh choiſe ſcandaliſe you to the world, or for feare, leaſt you be driuen to an vnpreuentable deſtruction: But if the ambition of others hath detained you in the bondage of impoſſible hopes and flatteries, ſhake off the deceite, and with the eyes of diſcretion behold your owne weakneſſe, conſidering Iuſtice correcteth the offender, as well as rewardeth the well deſeruer: But if *Medormus* Treaſons (hatefull to God and man, eſpetially to me, that am his kinſman, life giuer, and ſoueraigne,) haue bewitched your ſimplicities, that you can be content to deſpiſe your king, diſturbe the commonwealth, ſlaughter your friendes, Butcher vp your kindred, ruine this eſtabliſhed Cittie, and make a confuſion of all: Whether may I iuſtly exclaime on your vnreuerent partiallity, or the world condemne you for witleſſe & outraged? but me thinks, I heare ſome good Angell wiſper amongſt you, it is reaſon and truth I haue diſcouered, and therfore there muſt be error, nay monſtrous rebellion in theſe proceedings; deferre therfore your threatninges and keepe your vallures in ſtore againſt your enemies; for heere are none but allies, Countrymen, friends, and kinred, valeſſe like Parricides you are determined to vnrippe the Bowels of ſo carefull a Mother, I meane your Countrie, for whoſe Honour,

" if not for my ſake; Be not ſtained with the loth-
" ſome ſpottes of infamy; And behold mercy, peace,
" and life offer themſelues to your free election,
" take; and chooſe? the King ſpeakes, the king pro-
" miſeth, the King will performe; if not; let theſe
" be the times of terror, and the day of my aduance-
" ment neuer reckned in the yeere for this your ſtif-
" neckedneſſe; This was vttred ſo paſſhionately,
" that the extremity burſt forth into teares breeding
" remorſe, yea the manner of his demeanor was ſuch,
" that the impreſſion had wrought their defiance a-
" gainſt diſobedience, had not *Medormus*, ſtubborne
" *Medormus* counterpleaded: they were entrapped
" with ſubtilty; and enſnared with a cunning baite,
" tuſh (ſayth he) though *Artabanus* may make you
" beleeue, he will forgiue, yet can he neuer for-
" get this fault, and in the greateſt plentie of your
" dayes will once for all make a ſeiſure of your
" ſelues and inheritances; beſides? your names and
" families ſhall be odious vnto him, alwayes ſub-
" iect to ielouſies, and neuer put in truſt with mat-
" ters of import, as for aduancements they? ſhall be
" ſo farre from being conferred vpon you, that
" like ſtrangers you ſhall ſtand for euer remote;
" But why bread I this ſcruple amongſt you? You
" haue Iuſtice on your ſide, and conſcience bidds
" you aſſiſt me, that am wronged, as for *Artabanus*,
" he vſurpeth my right, and as the beſt of you can
" tell, ſo did his father deale with vnfortunate *Ceſtus*
" his elder brother; goe on therfore; goe on; I

ſay

ſay againe goe on, deuide the Kingdome at plea-
ſure, and make your owne peace and proſperitie
to flouriſh. But for all this golden field of Pro-
miſes, the third part of his Armie the next night
ſhrunke from him; and were doubly welcome to
Artabanus, both in the ſuccour by the vniting his
owne Forces, and the benefite in making knowen
Medormus ſecrets: whereupon *Anzitemus* perſwa-
ded to ſally, reaſoning on the diſhonour? for a Sub-
iect to encage ſo great a King in one ſilly Towne.

This was ſo forcible with *Artabanus* (who loo-
king on *Anzitemus* with the eyes of Iudgement,
wondred with what ſetled grauitie his Counſailes
weredeliuered, as if matureneſſe had brought him
from the wanton abead of Youth to the houſe of
Wiſedome,) that the men of Armes were that
night deuided into two parts: the one left with
the King, as a ſufficient guard for the Citie: the
other committed to *Anzitemus*, as an able Armie
for the Field; with which by breake of day, hee ſal-
lyed foorth, and reſembled a beautifull Plant newly
come to ſome ſhew in a Garden, which euery looke-
er on praiſed, as an Ornament to the place, and fea-
red, leaſt ſome misfortuue might ruine before his
time: But *Medormus* made vſe of his Souldiers re-
uolting, fortifying him ſelfe the ſtronger, doubling
his Watches, and in perſon ouer-looking his
Campe and Trenches, whereby hee was prepared
at all times; and ſo when the Alarum was giuen,
quickly made it an equall tryall: and although the

valiant *Anzitemus* whirled in the thickeſt preſſe, weakning the troopes, abating the ſtrength of the Enemie, reuerſing the deſpaire of the fainthearted, and proſecuting actions beyonde expectation, whereby his glory was both publiſhed, and ſtomaked; his friendes amaſed to behold magnanimity ſo well beſtowed, and his enemies confounded to finde the vallure of one man ſo ſufficient: yet were the *Medormians* ſo reſolute, and encouraged, that *Anzitemus* would not be further engaged, then his owne forces might purchaſe a freedome, & therfore made an honorable retreate, "as when you ſee the afterdrops of a ſtorme contiⁿue in the greateſt force at the parting: This he "accouſtomed many times beſides, as if deſtruction ment to play the wanton with the company, rather leſſning their number, then their hate; which ſo diſcouraged *Artabanus*, perceiuing no other hope then the calamity of his Realme, and confuſion of the people, that he determined by ſingle combate to preuent theſe reuenge-crying maſſacres, reſembling the Pellican, who by haſſard of "her owne life, feedeth and preſerueth her young "ones.

NOw when *Anzitemus* perceiued ſo gallant reſolution, hee could not miſlike the ſame; yet checked his owne ſlackneſſe for not being author of the matter; and therefore to make as it were ſatisfaction to his opinion, hee vrged

vrged *Artabanus* to elect him Champion of his cauſe, not ſo much in deed to confirme the King toward him, as to try *Medormus*; ouer whom hee was in a manner emulous: Againe, ſuppoſing in the preuayling an euerlaſting league would be combined, or in the default, his troubles ſhould end with his owne end: Heere grew a vertuous Contention betweene *Artabanus* and *Anzitemus*, the one inferring the vnreaſonableneſſe of the cauſe to bring a man of his deſeruing into ſo great danger for an others buſineſſe: the other, inſiſting on his deſire to match the Aduerſary vpon equall tearmes: at laſt, *Anzitemus* preuayled, and a Hearrold for the King proclaymed the Defiaunce; which *Medormus* durſt not but accept, becauſe the Company ouerboldly vrged him, that a Prince in poſſeſsion was willing to aduenture both life and dignitie; and they themſelues were almoſt tyred with butchering one another. But when *Gliranda* euer doting on his ſtrength, and cunning in matters of Armes, alleadged the likelihood of ſucceſſe, hee neuer diſputed, but appoynted time, place, and manner; which was by prime of day at a fourtnights end, a full mile from the Cittie, and like a Knight on Horſe-backe with Launce, Sword, and Shield: And although in the meane ſpace, ſome quiet ſpirits laboured betweene the parties, wiſhing *Artabanus* pacefied toward his Siſter and *Medormus*; and vrged *Medormus* to ſubmit to the King, whom Vertue would queſti-

Artabanus offereth priuat Combate to Medormus which Anzitemus performeth for the king.

onleſſe bring to the houſe of Pardon; yet hee miſconſtruing the Moderation of Peace-makers, was wilfully bent to put all to this tryall.

Thus is the day come, and the dignity of the King compelled ſome magnificent Shew for the furniſhing of *Anzitemus*. Firſt, diuers Purſeuants at Armes gaue notice of *Artabanus* approch, and a L. Marſhall with a hundred Seruants all well appoynted, ſo deuided the diſordered multitude, that the way ſeemed a liuing Wall, as if the men had admitted direction by line and leuell: then followed two hundred Courtyers on horſebacke richly apparrelled for their owne credits, and the Kings Honour: Next marched owne hundred Gent. on foote all in a Liuerie ſutable, which was a Roabe; *Moriſco* faſhion almoſt to the ſmall of the Legge of flame coulor Veluet, yet ſo darkned with black-ſilke and gold-lace, that you might eaſily imagine, there was ſorrow mingled with his glory, they had Sea caps embrodred ſorting to his *Impreſe*, ſemiters according, and halfe buskins of white Spaniſh Leather encloſed on the outſide with flame coulor Ribbin: Then followed twenty ſpare Horſe, on whom rode ſo many Pages bearing ſeuerall ſheilds with his deuice, which was a ſhip in full Saile betwixt *Scilla* and *Caribdis*, the Mott, *As ill is to come*, giuing notice his troubles were not ended, though he ſhould atcheeue this aduenture: after them rod fiue Knights with his caſke, Launce, Sword, Shield and Horſe, which

was

was trapped in a ſumptuous and curiouſe capariſon of Cloth of gold, wrought like flames of fier couered ouer with rowles made like waues of Sea water greene Cipers, in ſuch an artificiall looſneſſe mingled with the ſtuffe, that you would haue ſuppoſed the water to haue quenched the fier, and the fier to haue burned the water, beſides they were hooked togeather with great Claſpes of Goldſmiths worke ritchly Enameled, but more ritchly beautified with Diamonds and Rubies. Preſently followed a new faſhion Chariot made like a Rocke irremoueably ſtanding for all the waues ſeemed impetuous againſt it, which by reaſon of the motion of the Wheeles toſsing water againſt it indeed, like the violence of a Mill, reſembled a tempeſtuous Sea: Vnder it, or rather within it ſatte *Anzitemus* and *Artabanus*, who in a pleaſed grauitie and yet diſpleaſed Countenance gaue the people to vnderſtand, his care was not ſo much for his owne glory, as their ſafty: The Rocke was tyed to certaine Cables made of blacke Silke and Gold, which had their ſeuerall faſtning to ſixe Pinnaſes, ſo well deuiſed, that the Horſes enclоſed within them gaue action full libertie, and they Sailed with the Rocke away, as if they determined to drawe it out of the Sea: but the faſter they went, the ſorer did the Billowes threaten by beating on the ſides, yet ſtood the Rocke ſtrongly founded, aſſuering that vertue and magnanimitie remaineth integrate, what aduerce croſſes ſo

euer

euer chaunce: Round about went fiftie Gent on foote, the younger ſonnes of Noble men with Pollaxes in their hands, whoſe neereneſſe to the king gaue notice of their Honorable place, and credite. After followed the Officers of his Court, Guard, & Attendance; and laſt of all, fiue thouſand armed Souldiers brought vp the Reare, who well marſhalled with their Commaunders and Officers, was not the leaſt grace to the Trimuph.

Thus *Artabanus* came with *Anzitemus*, and *Anzitemus* with *Artabanus* into the Liſtes, mouing his very Enemies with the manner of his caryage, and the ſtate of his ſpectacle: and although his behauiour neither enclined to exceeding chearefulneſſe: nor diſconſolate ſadneſſe, wherby they might haue vſed correſpondence in theirs; yet began they to wonder with a kind of repentance, how they had been all this while ſubiect to ſuch preuarication: but the approch of *Medormus* extinguiſhed theſe meditations, who certefied by the Earle *Marſhall*, that *Anzitemus* was already in the Feeld, thus iſſued out of a Crimſen Veluet tent, all imbrodred with Croſſebowes of Gold with this Mott: *Viribus pluſquam ingenio*.

Firſt a fame on Horſebacke diuulging her hate to ſecrecy ſounded a very Warlike diuiſion: next followed diuers gallantly mounted with the ſeuerall *Penons* of all his Troops: then came fiftie Gent. on foote all apparrelled a like in an vpper Roabe of *Arabia*; the ſtuffe Crimſen Veluet, the faſhion

open

open before, cutt vp behind, and of each ſide: all places yet encloſed by reaſon great Gold-lace Buttons made of intricate knottes, were folded within the circuit of the like Loopes: On their head the attyre now vſed in *Turkeſtan*, but long ſince in *Siria*, made of Crimſon & yellow Cipers rowled compony togeather, and thicke beſet with Spangles: behinde almoſt to the Calfe of the legg hung a Scarfe faſtned to the rowles of Crimſon-Taffata, all ouer embrodred with Crownes: By their right ſide a ſhort Sword, guilt in the like coulored Sheth, as if they had been all left-handed, and ſignified, that what enheritance could not challenge, by one meanes or other he would obtaine: their Stockinges were of Yellow ſamitt, and Shooes of red Leather, as if they purpoſed for their Maiſters ſake to tread in Bloud: Then rode fortie Knightes his Allies and confederates, Armed in guilt Armour pounced with a Garden of Marigoldes, and a heauen ouerſpredding with a glorious Sunne in it, as if he were the Sunne of their glory, whom like the Marygold they would obſerue, for he had giuen them already Guilt maces in their hands, reſembling Scepters with intent to inueſt them kings: After followed tenn Pages on ſo many ſpare Horſes richly capariſond with ſeuerall deuiſes, but their ſheeldes had one *Impreſe*, which was an Arrow flying out of a Bow to the Element: The Mott higher then another: next attended three Knightes with his Helmett,

Shield, & Launce: Then came he himselfe proudly mounted, his Armour sumptuously enameled with certaine Crosse-bowes, which were no way to be bent but by force, but to see them of Goldsmiths worke richly embelished with Rubies and Opalles, orderly marshalled all ouer a Crimson-veluet Caparison; you would sure haue taken him for the Sonne of *Mars*, or Seruant of *Honor*: On his left Arme hee ware a Scarfe of Orenge curled Cipers all ouer tufted with Womans haire, made fast vnder buttons of Gold, quadrated with rich Diamonds. This *Gliranda* bestowed vpon him, as assuring shee would spare neither Hayre, nor Heart, to forward the enterprise. Last of all followed diuers companies of his Armie, not in mistrust of any vnlookt-for surprysing, but to giue the King notice, their obedience vnto him was not altogeather forced.

Thus is the comicall Shew presented, and many sportiue obseruations streamed about in a smoth channell: But now enters Death and Destruction to bring in a Tragedie, and the Princes summoned to doe their deuoire, with a gallant speedinesse make a stop in the midst of the race; so that what with fulnesse of their Strength, the swiftnesse of their Horses, the sureneesse of their Armour, the cunning in their Deuision, and their iust Meeting togeather: the Launces were weary of their length, and the Knights might for neereneesse imbrace one another: But this was soone forgot-

ten

ten, and their vnſheathed Swordes put them in minde, they were drawne to ſome purpoſe: ſo began a gallant Turny, which likewiſe had his paſſage, till *Medormus* quietly gathering vp the raines of his Horſe with his Bridle hand ſet him againe looſely forward, and indeed was the firſt, which ſtroke a blow of aduantage; wherein if hee had not ouer-liberally yeelded to his haſte, it had made an excellent tryall of the deliuery, whereas it now ſlided by without any ſetled damage: But when *Anzitemus* felt him ſelfe burdened with ſmart and ſhame, hee reprehended his ſlackneſſe, and ſet a taske on his courage to requite it, which by this time, made anger follow apace; yet loth to ſtrike him behinde, and vnable to wheele about, with a reuerſſe he hit him on the ſide of his head, & comming fortunatly forward, ſtroke him againe, as if hee meant to tell him, there was two for one. Quite was *Medormus* out of patience, and ſo put an action of diſtemperature in practiſe, by bearing his Shield ouer his Sword with a maine careere at his aduerſarie, who apprehending the miſchiefe, fortunately receiued it on the outſide of his; which vnable to reſiſt the force, vnwillingly deuided it ſelfe, and *Anzitemus* was glad he eſcaped ſo, ſuppoſing a ſlender loſſe ſooner recouered, then a greater, which made him imploy both his warineſſe and diligence the better, that hee deſiſted not, till *Medormus* beſt defence was broken, diſioynted, and vnable to ſtand him longer in ſtead; who

by this meanes without a Shield, was ſomewhat amaſed at his Aduerſarie; yet ſcorning to giue any ſuch notice, hee rayſed vp him ſelfe finding his Horſe much diſtempred, and acquainted with the property of the diſtemprature, made a wonderfull cloſe, not idle from imploying his Sword to the beſt purpoſe, inſomuch you would haue ſworne the Beaſt had been taught to fight: For with byting, flinging, ſtriking, ſhouldring, in deſpight of reſiſtance, hee bare *Anzitemus* Horſe and Man to the ground; wherein hee had made his Maſter great, yea ouer-great recompence, if *Medormus* preſuming to defeat him further, had not ouer-haſtely followed, and by ſome misfortune accompanied him in the diſgrace: which *Anzitemus* tooke in good part, and with a new chearefulneſſe auoyded his comberſome burden: ſo though Miſchaunce made him firſt fall, yet as good chance helped him firſt to riſe; whereby it appeared, that he had a Sword and halfe a Shield, againſt a Sword alone: yet was this Sword ſo well handled, that neither *Anzitemus* Armour, nor other additions to his courage, could preuent a forcible entrance into many parts of his Body, whereby the ſmart, and loſſe of blood, begged releeſe at his hands, and in a manner challenged him of vnkindneſſe, that would ſuffer ſuch a diſgrace: This turned anger into furie, and the Prince aduancing himſelfe, preſſed neerer and neerer, vnlaced the broken Strappes and Tyings, and made a checkquer partition

tition of his Faces and Curats. Thus continued the Fight with generall amaze of the beholders, and reciprocall damage to them ſelues: and had not *Anzitemus* ſhewed ſome prerogatiue in beeing better Breathed, as hee was better Armed, *Medormus* might haue equalled him both for ſtrength and courage. For when hee perceiued that the detracting of time, would be diſaduantagious to him, with a ſtrange ſodainneſſe hee helped his Sword with the ſtrength of both his armes, and ſtroke at *Anzitemus* head, and doubling the blow, made the Helmet giue way to a wrong ſeiſure, whereby (but that the fortune of flying aſunder ſlipped the force on the Gorget) the ſame hand had reached the Crowne of *Media*; yet deuine reuolutions determined otherwiſe, ſo that *Anzitemus* recouering ayre, ſummoned all the friendes of vallure, and making a ſtrong party, with a violent thruſt ran him through by the left Groyne. Thus had Death an vnkinde entrance, and hee (if there had been hope to the contrary) a willing vnwilling victory. *Medormus Slaine.*

But no ſooner held Iuſtice vp by this meanes, her Iuſteſt Ballance with an impartiall Arme, but an vnfained remorce conſtrained the company to cry, the Gods preſerue *Anzitemus*, the Gods ſaue *Artabanus*: who now haſted to the protector of his life and dignitie, with an obſequious ceremony, had not the other diſclaimed it, vrging only the pardon of *Gliranda*, which ſhe with a ſcorne re-

iected, for assured of her husbands death, bad death goe forward: and entertaine her for a slaue, that would not be the friend of life: so stabing her self, left an instace of Trayterous ambition worthylie rewarded.

Gliranda killeth her selfe.

Anzitemus meditateth on his owne affayres and his fathers imprisonment.

THis was for the manner & the parties querimoniall, but soone ouerpassed, in regard *Anzitemus* feeling his wounds begin to coole inforced their best care toward him, and so by the skilfull & fortunate Surgeon receiued presently some ease, & that hasted them to the Cittie, where the applause of the people, his welcome, and Triumph was so magnificent, that he seemed vnpained in his paine, & acknowledged sufficient satisfaction, though his debt to nature had been payed in the bargaine: But by that time the woundes of his body began to heale the corasitties of his minde craued some cataplasme, as his owne businesse, *Armenias* troubles, and *Artabazes* captiuitie: all which, like the humble futors for a friend in distresse, pleading to a King his merit, and how well bestowed his fauour should be toward him, vrged *Anzitemus* to goe the next way: whereupon hee counsayled *Artabanus* to recall his Forces out of *Persia*; reasoning, that a vertuous Peace, was to be preferred before an vniust Warre; and concluding to offer *Astiages* a present of euerlasting Amitie, by matching *Roxana* his Daughter to *Darius*,

Artabanus

Artabanus Sonne. Neuer was Counſell better beſtowed; for though *Anzitemus* thought by this contract, to reduce his confuſed buſineſſe to ſome forme, and ſo to be able to circumuent *Cleonidas*, where ſoeuer hee lurked; or at leaſt to redeeme his Father: yet they apprehended it, as the voyce of ſome good Angell for their happineſſe, and without more adoe, elected the Honourable *Mulcaſſes* to the Embaſie; by whoſe Commiſsion, *Adelphus Artabanus* Lieuetenant generall in *Perſia*, was againſt his will diſcharged, becauſe in deed the Souldiers were diſappoynted in their expectation, as euer louing better Booty and Spoyle, then Pay, or ſtrict Obedience to home Commanders. But certified of *Medormus* treaſons, and how honourably *Anzitemus* had behaued himſelfe, they quickly returned to the ſweet walkes of loue and dutie, and allowed *Mulcaſſes* authority: So *Adelphus* leaſurely gathered vp his Army, and yet departed not quite out of *Perſia*, till hee vnderſtood *Aſtiages* anſwere; who keeping his Court at *Suſiana*, (whither hee had withdrawne his Forces to gariſon) entertained *Mulcaſſes* as a Meſſenger of peace; and after audience, limitted a time to receiue his ſatisfaction.

But after he was fully diſmiſſed, the monſtrous enemies of Proſperitie, Enuie and Wrath made an onſet againſt the Kings honour, and ſo battered the citadell of good thoughts, that hee could not depreſſe his malice without diſcouering it thus to

his

" his Councell.

" My Lords: I am ſure, you will not be ſo ſparing " in your regard toward the renowne of *Perſia*, and " my Honour: but you remember the diſgraces of- " fred my fathers houſe by the firſt *Artabanus*, " who many yeeres turmoyled with a Ciuell-warre " our Country, and denied our right to this King- " dome: and now you ſee *Artabanus* his Sonne, as " his Father againſt the Law of nature would haue " diſappointed vs, againſt the Law of nations, hath " intruded himſelfe, my auncеſtors caſt cleane out " of doores by a mutinous rebellion, and I not per- " mitted the ſaftie of my hard gotten peace: yet you " ſee Iuſtice hath taken my part a little and Fortune " openeth now the doores of a further recompence, " I meane the Croune of *Media* it ſelfe; but how? " not by baſe relaxation and accordance to their " wills, but by our owne vallures, and preuailing ex- " curſions, preſſing now forward, as if a Tree cutt " to the heart and hanging by a ſmall hold were " with a ſtrong puſh to ridd the workman of more " labour: Let vs therfore ſooth this opportunitie, " and catch the Goddes by her goodly foretop, leaſt " ſhe take in ſcorne the diſdaine, and we prepoſte- " rouſly repent the negligence: But the moſt of his " Councell interpoſed their negatiues, and forecaſ- " ting the benefits of a floriſhing Common-wealth " through ſweete peace, deciphered the miſchiefes, " yea the miſeries of the beſt warre. Then *Aſtiages* " replyed, the Honor of a King was more then a

Million

Million of liues, and the Gods had appointed them their vicegerents, sometime like good stewards to husband their plenty & encrease their inheritance, sometimes like seuere Maisters to correct offenders and to be the scourges of Iuorath: howsoeuer, he would not remaine ouerinsulted by the wrong of an other, but be famous in after ages for some exployte of his owne: They againe inferred that contentions arose from prestigious spirits which delighted in the blood of men, that their late scares of desolation and aduersitie were not yet worne out, that plentie like an Orphan went mourning in the streetes, and that his election to the Diadem challenged no such bondage at their hands, because they well hoped in his conformity to good purpose, and had reofaild with *Artabanus* in the promise of the Kingdome; but this put him beyond all patience, as euer stomaking the house of *Media*, and watching an opportunitie to be reuenged, though in deed the first errour proceeded from the incontinencie and tyranny of *Persia* vpon this occasion.

The story of Ormisdates and Damafloris.

ORmisdates not long since King of *Persia*, hauing matched with *Garifeola*, *Artabanus Otanes* Mother of *Media* matched her likewise with Noblenesse of birth and minde, and by reason of their loues, the Kingdome like a well manured Ground, brought foorth encrease

creaſe of much happineſſe, to the ineſtimable enriching of the poſſeſſor: For although the Queene was barren of her body, yet her inward excellencies ſo flouriſhed, that they added life to good conceite toward her; and indeed moderated to the admiration of diuers, and the honor of the King, that wanton libertie, which ſuch a Prince in enioying many concubines, preſumeth on. But the oldeſt Wood doth ſooneſt burne, and *Ormiſdates* in his declining age was ſooneſt allured to luſt-breaking faith, and did degenerate from himſelfe, I meane ſtood not ſo ſtrongly on his Guard of vertue, when there was expectation of ſetled humours, as in the heate of youth when the errors of life might haue paſſed with excuſe: For as he paſſed through the ſtreetes of *Magranopolis* to cellebrate the feaſt of the Sunne, he caſt his eyes vpon a window, wherein a Lady (at left her outward ſhew bare the ſame record) ſate with a countenance compounded of cheerefull affabillity, and louely modeſty, little thinking, that cunning had taught her eyes both to allure, and draw compaſſion, that experience had brought her countenance to the vſe of many changes, that neceſsitie had made her tongue deny, where ſhe wiſhed, and demaund, where ſhe knew there was nodeniall; that time had wrought her heart ſometime like waxe to melt with the warmth of deſier, ſometime like ſtone to be hardned with diſdaine: & that couſtome had euſtructed her demeanor Matronlike, if there were

were occaſions of ſobrietie: Courtlike, if great eſtates importuned, and fantaſtique, if there were inducements of wantonneſſe.

This was *Damaſtoris*, a woman of reaſonable good Parentage, of reaſonable good yeares, of reaſonable good eſtate, a Widdow childles, and wealthy, two helpes in all conditions and Common-wealths; and a wanton taking the benefite of her time: and belike finding inconuenience in the obedience of one man, would not ſo ſubiect her youth and liberty any more; whereupon ſhee made vſe of her experience, and indeed ouerliberally ſatisfied her pleaſure: Yet with that delicate conueyance, that the fault ſeldome appeared; and if it did, could not be vrged againſt her. With her *Ormiſdates* fell in loue, or at leaſt in ſuch liking, that hee perſwaded him ſelfe it was loue, and ſo determined to perſwade her: this yet was the doubt, the meanes of acceſſe, hee not able to come to her without ſpeciall notice taken, and for ſpeciall purpoſe; ſhee not likely to come to him, neither willing to attende in Court, nor hauing cauſe of Petition or complaint: At laſt Deſire bred Imagination, Imagination Conceit, Conceit ſome Diſquiet, and Diſquiet muſt needes haue Redreſſe: Now when Princes come to ſeeke Redreſſe, I hope no man will imagine, that any worldly meanes can be waiting; and when the King of *Perſia* importuned diſpatch, who would not? nay, who did not endeuour to pleaſe and to pleaſure him? yet heerein

hee onely imployed *Pasquito*, a man of reasonable comelinesse, exceeding good behauiour, dellicate ellocution, setled experience, (as hauing all his time like a cunning Marchant, seene many Countries, and neuer daring to venture his Wealth in one Shippe) and honourable secrecie such a qualitie that somtimes all other good partes fayling it simplie preuayleth: who at the first, pleaded many excuses to the King, of disgrace in the action, hassard of preuayling, & so incurring his displeasure, danger of temptation, ielosies, mistrustes, and the cunning of Women: At last the king commaunding, or he being willing to obey, *Pasquito* furnished him selfe, and came to *Damasloris* with all the graces of a Princes solicitor: first beginning with her owne worth, that shee did Beautie wrong, to keepe it like a Flower in a close Potte, making no vse either to please the scent, or the sight: that shee was a present for a mighty King (and peraduenture a King indeed did like her. (This hee sayd, to make her inquisitiue, knowing Women were subiect to curiositie) that he had heard and knew shee was Wise, and therefore would not refuse the fortune was toward her; and that hee came from *Ormisdates*, who wished well vnto her, and had sent a Present of kindnesse by him; so that if hee were not an vnworthy Messenger, and a man hatefull, it could not choose, but shee must apprehend the blessing ment. This was vttered in so good a fashion, that though shee had knowne, how to haue reprooued Incontinencie, yet could shee not much

much mislike him, that did but his dutie to his Prince; nor the King, that offered fauour to his Subiect; nor her selfe, for beeing solicited by the mighty *Ormisdates*: But with a kind of abashed drawing backe, rather studying to contriue her businesse to the best purpose, then willing to entertaine any cause of mislike, shee yet made him beleeue, there was cause of mislike, saying, (and almost weeping in so saying) that the King wronged her much, to suppose shee would make sale of her Chastity; that hee wronged her more so to motion her dishonour, hauing neither seene nor heard any tokens by her of immodesty. All this, sayd *Pasquito*, is confessed: yet, quoth hee, the loue of a King is of that prerogatiue, that hee protested, it was more for her owne sake, then the Kings satisfaction hee came thither; and so by degrees of insinuation, fell to appeasing her; from appeasing to perswading, from perswading to counsayling, that howsoeuer she determined (which sayth he, I will not vrge further against your vertuous resolution) it were not amisse to speake with the King. Heere shee stopped againe, falling to the examination of particulars, how, when, and where, the King should take notice of her? All which, he certified with excellent circumstances. Then she made many doubts of the Queenes iealousie, the Courts opinion, and her owne iourney. Nay, sayth hee, if you vouchsafe me the Author of this good Newes to my Prince, neither Queene, Court, nor your

ſelfe, ſhall know your ſelfe, or once haue cauſe to entertaine the attributes of Ieloſie. Thus it was concluded, that ſhee ſhould bee diſguiſed like a Marchant of *Arabia*, and ſo vnder colour of the ſale of rich Iewels haue ſecret conference with *Ormiſdates*, and this ſhe did with that gallant demeanor and attractiue, that the King was rather rauiſhed then enamored toward her, yea ſhe behaued herſelfe ſo well, that at a ſecond meeting he promiſed to inueſt her a Dutches, and if he had iſſue by her to proclaime him heire to his kingdome, which was performed accordingly: For with in one yeere after, ſhe brought him a ſonne named *Aſcraſapes*, and he thought himſelfe a happy man to be the Father of a Child: This made him dote on her the more; and that made her deale with him the cunninger: ſo that the Queene *Garſeola* ſeemed altogeather forgotten, and her former deſeruing was ouergrowne with the rancke weedes of a Strumpets flatterie, which ſhee could not but repine at: yet at the firſt, ſhee gently behaued her ſelfe, till finding the nature of ſome things, as Nettles and Burres to ſting the forer by the ſofter handling, ſhee remembred her great birth, and plainely tould him the wrongs done to her and her houſe were intollerable; and that ſhee would be reuenged both on the tother and the Baſtard: this incenſed the king, and mingled with the Counterfeate feare of *Damafloris* contriued a ſtrange courſe, which was by deuorce (vnder colour

lour of barrenneſſe) to be ſeperated from her, not deſiſted he ſo: But as a man tumbling downe a paire of Staires neuer linsfalling till he came to the bottome, did he cauſe the ſame reſemblance in the Queene, abſolutely putting her by all gouernment, and proclaiming *Damaſloris* in her ſtead. But when *Artabanus Otanes* her Sonne vnderſtood of theſe proceedings, the indignitie was too hainous to tollerate, and the reuenge too difficult to attempt: yet ſomething muſt be done to keepe his Honour intigrate, and his Mother from ſo ſtrange infamie; wherupon without further ambagie, finding himſelfe vncapable of the Scepter, by reaſon that the Lawes of *Perſia* debarred a Stranger (which yet they afterward went about to diſanull) and vnable to make a conqueſt in regard of home incumbrances, hee determined to caſt it on ſome other, whoſe neereneſſe and abilitie might ſecond the enterpriſe. To this counſaile was *Tautaxes* called, a Noble man of *Perſia* of the honourable family of *Odonates*, and next heire to the Crowne; to him did *Artabanus* inferre the ſcandall of the Kingdome, the wicked life of *Ormiſdates* infaming them all, the baſtardy of *Aſcraſapes*, an vnlawfull ſtop to hinder his courſe, the deſire of the people to haue reformation, (who moſt commonly vnder that goodly ſhew, begin inouation,) and his owne power to aſsiſt him; touching ſparingly his Mothers wrouges, as if hee would leaue out ſomewhat for him to remember, and ſo might be ſure

of

of his apprehention, which consorted to his wish: For *Tautaxes* ambitious enough of himselfe was willing to be thought worthy to be a Prince, not remembring the danger of that point, but now incited by such liklyhoodes, he gathered his forces and friendes togeather, sending *Artabanus* word, "that if he would come in person (because he would "haue the name of a King and credite to the action) "there should not many oare want to rowe the Boate "to what streame he liked.

Thus began the cruell Warres of *Persia*, and this stone neuer left rowling, till *Ormisdates* house was cleane extinguished, and the Crowne at last united to *Media*: yet many battailes were first fought, and the seuerall alterations gaue only notice, that this world is a stage of vncertainties: For as *Artabanus* once brought the King to a narrow streight, and *Tautaxes* if he had followed his Fortune might haue ended the Warre, *Ormisdates* thus despighted in the worst manner made the wronged *Garsecola* beare the burden of his rage, and striking off her head sent it her sonne as a present: I will not say he lamented a remedilesse matter: but he prosecuted his reuenge and went forward apace, had not his owne misfortunes in despight of resolution recalled him, and this was the first reuolt of *Medormus* and *Gliranda* in *Media*: yet *Tautaxes* proceeded as well now to liue as to raigne: For there is no *Medeum* betweene an *Emperor* and Traytor, and in a gallant encounter shew the misled

Ormis-

Ormisdates, and returned in triumph toward *Magranopolis*, where the incontinent *Damasloris* kept her Court, of purpose to shew the greatnesse of her state in that place, where once shee had liued in meane degree: But as hee was marching, a Brother of the Queenes vnder colour of Embasie from *Artabanus*, and craiuing priuat conference, stabd him to the heart with a poysoned Knife.

Now was *Damasloris* sole Queene, and with her cunning and authoritie, handled her businesse so well, that by aduancing of some, bestowing of Offices on others, placing reconsiled Friends (least farre off they might prooue dangerous Enemies) neereſt her seate, and forbearing a time the vsuall impositions of the Kingdome, her former errour was forgotten, and they were contented to admit of her Sonne *Ascrasapes* for King; who by this time was able to conceiue of matters of gouernment; and seeing the miseries which the Warres had in a manner deuasted all the Kingdome with, pollitickly matched with *Mitrea* the Daughter of *Tautaxes* slaine by his Vnckle, hoping by vniting both the Families togeather, to leaue no scruple nor doubt for his succession. In his time many troubles were appeased; but what he purposed the strength of his state, was his owne ouerthrow, like a man determining to spit poyson out of his mouth, but doing it against the winde, it flyeth backe againe in his face, and inuenometh

as ill: Which came to paſſe by hauing a Sonne this *Aſtiages* now reigning, whom his Mother *Mitrea* brought vp very carefully, as looking on him with reuengefull and ambitious eyes to maintaine her owne greatneſſe, and by his meanes to bring to good end, what ſhee had long ſince deuiſed. Firſt then, the remembrance of her Father helped forward her hate againſt *Damafloris*; and that ended not without effects, and they procured *Aſcraſapes* to depoſe her from her regencie, by ſuggeſting a conference happening betweene the Mother and Sonne, wherein ſhee dared to tell him, hee muſt reſpect her as principall cauſe of his Honour, and that hee was tyed in a kind of duty toward her, for aduancing him in this ſort. Little needed the Spurre to a forward Horſe; little needed *Mitrea* to vrge this againſt her, becauſe hee tooke it in ill part, and the Sonne of ſuch a woman had malice enough in ſtore; which according to the Queenes owne deſire, made his Will ſtand for a Law againſt both his Mother and her partakers. The ſecond attempt was againſt the King himſelfe; for finding her heart to ſtomacke ſhee was matched with a Baſtard, for whoſe ſake her Father was ſlaine; and her ſelfe more in pollecie, then honour and loue thus confirmed, ſhee cared not what troubles were procured, or miſchiefe might ſettle her minde; ſo that after many circumſtances, *Aſcraſapes* died, not without ſuſpition of poyſon, and ſhee in her *Phaetons* flouriſh was

ſole

ſole Queene of the *Eaſt*. But the Noble men of *Perſia* caſting vp the account of theſe ſtrange diſtractions of the Common-wealth, thought by taking away the cauſe to remooue the effects; and by quite aboliſhing the race of *Ormiſdates*, (eſpecially the ofspring of *Damafloris*) and ſomewhat fearing the violent humour of the Queene *Mitrea*, determine for another King, and looking toward *Artabanus* of *Media*, as well for his owne worth, as his Grandmothers ſake, and Fathers loſſe; who though he periſhed not in the Fieldes of *Perſia*, yet by his beeing heere, his troubles in *Media* were occaſioned, nominated him to the place, and ſent accordingly to bid him prouide for all their goods: Yet by the good behauiour of *Mitrea*, was this iudgement reuerſed, and *Aſtiages* her Sonne appearing with ſome towardlineſſe, made them repeale the former Edict, as it were pittying his youth, and that hee deſerued no ſuch puniſhment; but indeed the deſire of ſatisfaction toward the noble houſe of *Tautaxes* bound in their duty and obedience with ſtricter obſeruation: So they all ſubmitted to *Aſtiages*, and misfortune weary of tarrying long in *Perſia*, paſſed into *Media*, as you haue heard: in which time the Kingdome of *Aſtiages* recouered ſome part of her former glory, vntill *Artabanus* tooke vpon him the burden of being wronged, and ſo lay in waite for reuenge; which hee went about, but was fruſtrated by his forces defeature vnder the leading of

Adelphus and ſo ſhot another ſhaft of all peace working goodneſſe, bythe ſending of *Mulcaſſes*: but how he ſped the Prince, *Sacromirus* heere can beſt tell: For as I ſuppooſe the beautie of *Roxana* daughter to *Aſtiages* had then drawne him into *Perſia*: Indeed ſaid *Sacromirus*: indeed ſayd the *Duke*; by your Princely leaues we will be ſparing of this delight. For pleaſure vſed with extremytie looſeth her ſweetneſſe, and beſt propertie: therfore let vs firſt dine and remember the Ladyes, as well loue exerciſe, as diſcourſes; and yet the hearing of other mens matters doth little touch their owne prayſes: ſo that day paſſed with the varietie of Courtly paſtimes, and the next with the flying of Hawkes, the third with hunting, and the fourth made the time ſeeme very long, had not the company entreated *Sacromirus* to finiſh *Anzitemus* ſtory: who thus began.

Sacromirus ſome of Hircania proceedeth with Artabanus hiſtorie.

AFter *Aiſtages* was in in a manner reſtarined by the wiſdome of his Councell: he yet moſt ingenerouſly ſcorned to be ſo courbed of his will, and enraged, put in execution a terrible reuenge, impriſoning *Mulcaſſes* againſt the Law of Armes, and ſurpriſing *Adelphus* againſt the Law of honeſtie: within the time of truce gathering his Armie togeather, and one night came vpon him vnprouided, he yet vſed the aduantage of his Trenches, and ſome ſtreight paſſages he had fortu-

fortunately *Barricaded*: But alasse this rather sharpned, then rebated their courage; So by reason of ouernumber and home assisted, they quickly made a breach into the Campe, and Triumphed with a notable slaughter: *Adelphus* dangerously wounded, and hardly escaping to be the messenger of more harder tidinges.

When *Artabanus* saw himselfe thus subiect to the mallice of fortune, and that he resembled a man, who once stumbling neuer left reeling, till he came to the ground, or one whom shrewd Turnes, (as it were in sequence) followed after one another: his modest anger could not refraine from inuection, and passionat complainning against his Fortune: But when *Anzitemus* stomached the dishonor, because his Councell consorted not with successe, and that he saw a further procrastination of his businesse, little needed *Artabanus* to trouble conceite, how to winde vp the Wheeles of this engine: For he importuned the iorney in person, and opposed against the difficulties obiected: Wherupon the *Magi* and *Haruspices* were commaunded to attend, who by their sacrifices deuined the greatest and happyest euent, and *Anzitemus* with a well prouided and sufficient Armie passed through all the borders of *Persia*, possessing the strongest holds, and after in three encounters preuayled against *Astiages*, enforcing his retreate to the strong Towne of *Susiania*, where the place almost impregnable made him lye a while houe-

The story of Anzitemus and Astiages.

" ring like a skilfull Faulken, that with aduantage he
" might seaſe on his prey.
" By this time had report added much to his glory;
and that made the comparison betweene his true
vertue, and *Astiages* ill-disposition stand him in
great stead: For when vntoward remembrance had
layed open the recordes of all their strange acci-
dents, which turmoyled *Persia*, they reckoned
themselues in the rancke of vnhappy subiects vn-
der an vnhappy King, the rather for that the Roy-
all *Anzitemus* came orderly to demaund *Mulcus-*
ses deliuery, and to propound the former articles
of peace vnto them by the Maryage of *Roxana*
to *Darius Artabanus* sonne, and so to dismisse
his Armie. But the disloyall *Astiages* not only en-
treated him with scorne, but barborously murde-
dred *Mulcasses*, & like a Monster in nature, brought
him in seuerall Dishes dismembred before them all:
and thus with a violent gesture, vngorged his mal-
lice. Why base fugitiue? Art not thou the wret-
ched sonne of a more wretched Father, whom
his Country scorned, and people exiled? what
monstrous presumption hath besotted thee to
terrefie *Persia* with wonder-making deuises,
as if I were an infant vnder a foolish Mother
to be beaten with a Rod, and appeased with a
trifell? Or dost thou suppose with thy vntoward
proceedinges, by the helpe of my owne subiects,
Traytors to our God and me, to affright or dismay
Astiages, who if the worst faull will reare out his

Astiages murdreth Mulcasses.

heart

heart, and throw it in thy face? thou art deceiued, Vacabond as thou art: yet becauſe you counterfeite a kinde of embaſſage, your iorney ſhall not altogeather be fruſtraite; heere is *Mulcaſſes*; here is *Aſtiages* that brought him; and heere is the contempt of *Armenias* power, and *Artabanus*, that ſent him: Thus is your farewell concluded, vnleſſe you meane to ſupply the defects of my entertainment with this cheare.

But what cheare could the vncheered company make; when the hideous ſpectacle daunted the ſtouteſt courage? or what anſwere might they frame, that knew not how to ſpeake, becauſe they could not; nor could, becauſe they durſt not; nor durſt, being ſo appauled? the company of his owne obedience ſtrangely altered, and the reſt ſooner altred, as hauing no cauſe to obey: yet doe not imagine they ſate long to behold, or durſt, as they ſate, behold ſo vilde a ſight: But riſing in a mutinous turmoyle, ſpent the ſhorteſt time in exclamation, & offerd ſuch violence, as the place and number permitted: but in vaine doe they attempt further, for feare, and ſhame; or ſhamefull feare hath caried his hatfull body into ſome remoat corner, where affraide to ſee the miſhappen deformitie of his minde, he ſmothered all the motions of reformation with a working conceite of more miſcheife.

By this time is the Cittie in Armes, as terrefied with a ſuſpition of their owne ruine, and moſt of them

them came to behold the Lamentable ſpectacle; whereof the amaſednesſe made them fly one from another, notable to comfort one another; yea they miſtruſted one another, had not *Anzitemus* rightly conceiuing, what might ſucceed after ſuch impreſsion, thus recalled and recomforted them. O yee diſtreſſed and abuſed *Perſians*, whoſe former renownes made *Aſia* the ſtore-house of Honour, and honourable report; now doth the
" fauour of bleſſed influence ſmile vpon you: now
" may you redeeme your captiued happineſſe: now
" may you ſettle your deſires of reformation: For,
" hath not your infamy by three diſſcents been like a
" loathſome Leproſie to the whole face of the
" world, euery man hating, yet daring not but diſ-
" ſemble? How did *Ormiſdates* tyranny make your
" Cities like a Butchery? How did *Aſtyages* make
" you reſemble Seruants watched by the eye of a
" hard-harted Nigard, who no ſooner take bene-
" fite of his abſence, but loyter in deſpight, and wiſh
" him to the Diuell? For you know, how he dyed &
" you know you were cared to examine, How hath
" *Aſtiages* played the imprudent tutor with you
" whoſe rage ouercommeth diſcretion, making wil-
" fulneſſe the author of Correction; and dulling with
" vngentle behauiour, ſuch as otherwiſe would be
" very tractable: For you cannot deny, but the beſt
" haue been ſuſpected, the meaneſt deſpiſed, the Citys
" ouer exacted, and terrefied; the Countries abuſed,
" the Lawes infringed, the Fayth of Princes violated,

and

and the reſpect of *Artabanus* had toward you inhumanely reiected. Laſtly, (and would it might be the laſt of all your miſchiefes) it is hee, which is the Author of all theſe feares, and with his owne hands (as you ſee) murdered *Mulcaſſes*, a Noble man of *Media*, an Embaſſadour of Peace: Yea, ſuch a Peace, whoſe progreſſe had brought you to the Pallace of Happineſſe; whoſe retardence warranteth your vtter ruine, and vnleſſe you condemne this Monſter for poyſoning the Spring of *Perſias* glory, and hate him, that durſt hate Honour, Vertue, and Goodnes: *Armenia*, *Media*, and all the powers wee can make, ſhall contract againſt you.

To this enforcement, ſome of their owne Nobilitie preſent at the vnhappines (whether taking in ſcorne the diſgrace, as though they had been vſed for inſtruments of Infamie, or obſeruing *Anzitemus* Maieſty and demeanour with delight) added their witneſſes and confirmation; which made the company (euer flattering the preuayler who ſoeuer) ſubmit to *Anzitemus* appoyntment, and vſe the beſt meanes for all their ſafeties: whereupon hee admitted moſt part of his forces into the Towne, and ſo by being Maiſter of the principall Seat of the Kingdome, thought it a good ſtep to forward his buſineſſe.

Anzitemus forces admitted into Suſiana.

But

Astiages desperate of recouery, considering Anzitemus possessed his Kingdome, flyeth to Cleonidas.

BVt by that time the next morning had wiped away the dolefulnesse of the night, a new Alarum rayſed the Armie, and diſturbed them all: For *Astiages* certified of this diſaſter, wherein his wilfulneſſe had entoyled him, and how hee was in a manner caged vp within his owne Cittie, of which before his eyes a Stranger had the poſſeſsion, tooke it ſo ill at Fortunes hands, that all enraged, hee thus encouraged his fauourites.

"Oh (ſayth hee) there is no truſting to any place "wee haue wronged; beſides, our prouiſion can- "not long laſt, though the Hold (as wee may for- "teſie it) ſeeme impregnable, and to driue you to vn- "preuentable miſchiefes when the enemie will in- "creaſe, as well in number as in Pride; and for- "mer diſgraces ſet other on worke to reuenge, is "that I may not, nor will not ſuffer. Let vs there- "fore now ſet vpon them, as they are debating the "matter, and by fyering the Cittie, wee ſhall draw "the moſt of them to looke to their priuate and ſo "in not preuayling, preuaile to make our eſcape in the burliburly: For the reſt, let the changes of time determine, as they may. Theſe ſpeaches, and the performance, had but one howre: for his Souldiers with Firebrands in their hands, came running through the ſtreetes, killing all they met, and caſting them into euery houſe they could enter, and although the neceſsitie of their buſineſſe proiected only eſcape for *Astiages*: yet as if they had been to Sacke the place, the miſeries of ſuch change ſucceeded,

ceeded, murdring all sortes without difference of sexe or age, pillaging, taking of prisoners, rauishing of women, and mingling a cruell victory and dissolute pleasure together, till *Anzitemus* ouertooke them. Wyrling downe the streete to the water-gate, where some forces had intercepted their passage, whereby an equall mett manhood grew to the greater proufe, when the streightnesse of the place compelled to fight or defence, and *Astiages* played his part so well, that all men had him in admiration. For the troopes were weakened, the arayes broken, the assailants slaine, the retirers dismembred, and this new feare bread new confusion: But when *Anzitemus* had resembled him to a rauenous Mastife in a hunger starued night, who carlesse of the owners welfayre breaketh into a company of sheepe, mangling more with the chase, then necessitie, he prest neerer to single him out, and his modest anger could not refraine from thus reprehending him. Oh insatiate homicide! What Tiger cherished thy infancie? or didst thou sucke the Teates of cruelties, that thou scornest all vertue, humanytie, and true manhood: and soothest each venemous motion with a false obedience to stubborne will; surely the Gods are not such as our reuerence adore; If this impietie haue with her spring alike repining Haruest; Nor are men worthy the earths encrease, if they suffer this outrage, and let *Anzitemus* be for euer defamed; if he endeuour not to

puniſh ſuch a wretch. But when *Aſtiages* heard the name of *Anzitemus*, and knew that this was hee, which entred his Realme, with-drew his Subiectes from him, tooke his Townes, was now Maiſter of the Citie, and had driuen him to theſe ſtreightes; the outward franticknesſe proceeding from inward diſtemperature, beat the Earth, gnaſhed his Teeth, and bitt the very Coriſelet hee wore. Yea the rage changed his countenance to a duskiſh blackneſſe; which ſhewing the ſtrange effect of hate opened the ioynts, whereby the veines ſpurted out their fulneſſe; and not able to proceed any further, then oh yee infernall powers, hee made his Sword the Hearald of a dangerous Defiance, whoſe force tryed, whether *Anzitemus* ſtrength could abide it falling, or courage vphold him ſelfe ſtaggering, the ſtanders by imputing it both to Cunning and Fortitude, that that one blow had not finiſhed the tryall: Now was *Anzitemus* put to the pollicie of an out-facing retreat, not in any diffidence of the Combat, but in hope of better aduantage: For perceiuing his Aduerſary bent to ouermaiſter him, with actiue warineſſe he bare off the burden of infinite ſtrokes; but finding at laſt, the Tirant wearied with making too much haſte, and that his Strength beeing ſpent, his Furie paſſed with a kind of ſlackneſſe, hee aduanced him ſelfe; and rebuking Shame encreaſed his courage, that *Aſtiages* might not auoide vnlacing his Armes, deuiding his Shield, nor

wounding

wounding his Body. And thus haue I ſeene a new made Fire tarry a while, vntill heate had dryed the moyſture of the Fuell, and then in a ſodaine flame to make reflexion of greater warmth: yet was *Aſtiages* loth to diſcouer either diſabillytie or ſuſpition, but ſtriuing with an excellent courage, made it a perilous fight, and the perill bade them beware of the effectes, which was vtter deſtruction. And as when two mightie Lyons hauing both their Females in neceſſitie of food, happning at an inſtant on a little pray fall at ſuch variance, that the ſcorne of diſtribution ſettleth them to beſatisfied in the bloud one of another: So theſe as mightie combatants not acknowledging the leaſt difference, determine, that life ſhall depart, before Honour be ſubiect to diſgrace, wherby the ſtrangneſſe wrought an amaſe, and the manner a kind of delight. For they taking vp the narrow Rome of the ſtreete, the reſt had libertie to breath as if they ſeemed weary in the Butchering one of another, and apprehended the end of all their troubles in the end of this controuerſie: But *Aſtiages* ſeeing no hope of the conqueſt, and beginning to miſdoubt him ſelfe, fell backe againe to his firſt reſolution of eſcape, and remembring his League with *Cleonidas*, thought there was poſsibilitie to returne with ſufficient Fortune and Reuenge, if hee could get thither by any meanes: Whereupon, lifting vp the fayling legges of Courage with all the remainder of a worne-out Furie, he whirled

at the turning head of his aduersary a blow of too great perill, had not his eyes twinckling at the brandishing of the weapon, been a caueate to other motiones, wherby a sudden starting made his right foote slip, and the earth yeeld, so that thinking to giue forward, the body measured the ground with his length; which *Astiagas* tooke hold of, and by crying *Anzitemus* was slaine, in despight of opposition, made for the time a fortunate escape, euery one confounded with the sorrowfull newes, and hindering one another with a rumerous entercourse: But their feare and griefe with a chearefull contrarietie is soone reuersed by the vprysing of *Anzitemus*, and although they could not satisfie him with reuenge on the person of the King; yet did they recompence him with the gift of the Kingdome, and with *Panegericall* ceremonies conducted him to the Pallace, not doubting, but as the Beare displeased with natures deformity by often licking fashioneth her young ones to an appointed shape; So would he deale with their dissolute Common wealth, and reforme what had misled the company amisse.

Astiages flyeth to his Ships.

But because I haue brought him to so good lodging, and that he fouud the beautifull *Roxana* there, I will qustionlesse leaue him, as vnwilling to enter into vnfortunate discourses, either concerning himselfe and father: or touching *Brizaca* who might be suspitious to heare *Roxana* named. Nay (qouth *Trezoboro* in his Sisters behalfe) things

past

paſt are paſt care, & therfore I dare auouch *Brizacas* content ſhal conſiſt in *Anzitemus* future reſpect, but they I perſwade my ſelfe, will well agree. So ſhall we neuer (replyed' king *Zalby*) vnleſſe we be thankefull to the Prince for his diſcourſe, and entreate the gratious *Brizaca* once againe to impoſe this taske on *Anzitemus*, For I proteſte, I long to heare, by what chaunce the director of all chaunces hath conſented, that this meeting ſhould be recorded in the volumes of admiration. But *Rugio* ſayd, there was no reaſon in the ſuddenneſſe: For he had a purpoſe to ſhew the Princes the Arbour, which King *Zalby* ſo much liked, and they after they liked, ſo much commended: in this taking the benefite of the next ſunnes aduancement: the Feaſt was prepared, but till it pleaſe them to riſe from their ſolemnytie, I dare not begin to trouble you with the diſcourſe.

Finis libri Tertij

THE FOVRTH BOOKE of the Hiſtorie OF TREBIZOND.

Imprinted at London by W. White
for *T. Downes and E. Dawſon.*
1616.

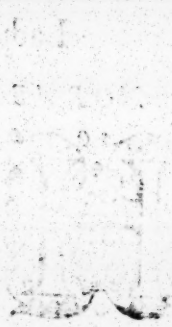
To the Honorable Lady CHANDOS.

HONORABLE LADY:

HOweuer Honour hath appeaſed your repinings, and as it were cooſoned your Birth-right with the courteſie of England; *ſo that it ſeemes a diſparitie to place you the laſt, that are eldeſt in blood, and as worthy as the beſt: Yet would I not exempt you from my owne poore Wiſhes; nay I durſt not deuide you from your Mother and Siſters, leaſt I might want the full participation of that grace and Vertue, which I propoſed to my ſelfe from your fauour: Therefore I pray you giue me leaue to warme all benumming deſpaire with the Sunne of your Honor & acceptation; and amongſt your other Vertues, let me both affright Deſpaire, that you will pardon my Errour, and ſtrengthen my Hopes: that you will entertaine my good meaning, though it be but in the preſenting of a Booke: For I proteſt, when I ran away hoodwinckt with an opinion, it would paſſe in the World as the deceit of Idleneſſe, there was a pleaſure in pretending your Patronage; and more then a Hope, in naming my* Lady Chandos, *as a Miſtris of this Dedication.*

Your Honors humbled in all impoſitions:

Tho. Gainsforde.



The fourth Booke of the Historie of TREBIZOND.

NO sooner was the Solemnitie of the Feast ended, and the conueniencie of the place renewed their desires to beguile tediousnesse with delight, but *Brizaca* proposed to *Anzitemus* the importunitie of the Princes to be made acquainted with his Story, and he surrendring obedience thus proceeded. *Anzitemus proceedeth in his owne story.*

I cannot deny, but the fortune of that Victorie (if I add not an vnpropper Title to the successe) flattred mee with better hope, then *Astiages* tried in his election: Yet I protest, Ambition had no such scope, either to elate my frailtie, or admit of their proffers, although peraduenture with my owne, and other auxiliary forces, I might haue awed both forren and domestick repining: So that I made slight answer to them, and vrged againe in a manner denied to be so incombred: But they supposing a further worthynesse by my abashed drawing backe oppressed me with reasons of their loue, choice, and necessity, and compared in my behalfe abillity, vertue, and deseart: I againe remembring my fathers captiuity, and the

truſt repoſed in me by *Artabanus*, meant not to committe my fayth to a ſtrange gouernment of deceite, nor betray a good beginning to contumely: Therefore gathering togeather the beſt reputed amongſt them, I thus demeaned my ſelfe.

The Perſians would chooſe Anzitemus king but he refuſeth.

I vnderſtand (worthy to be beloued Lords) that ſome ſlender towardlyneſſe in theſe proceedings, hath ouerſwayed better conſideration, whereby you determine to impoſe this ſoueraignety vpon mee: but Wiſedome aduiſeth you to take heed „ in a pollitical body, what Head you admit, be„ cauſe if that exceed not in all aptneſſe, the inferi„ our members, no concord can continue a peace, „ nor conformity make a perfection: For though „ in a Monarchy ſetled in many degrees of diſcent, „ ſome one degenerating from the vertue of his „ predeceſſors, for thoſe vertues, and thoſe prede„ ceſſors ſake is not all togeather impeached: yet „ in ſuch a kingdome, as this, if the place be to be „ ſupplyed with a man from the choiſe of others, „ neither muſt your obedience be abuſed, nor his „ wilfulneſſe maintained: Let not then my defects „ ſo bewitch your opinion with a ſparing regard „ of your ſelues; conſidering all that is, or ſhould „ be in ſuch a perſon (though I weare no alien and „ might liue without feare of any concurrent) are in „ me wanting: For to be more particular; a King „ muſt as well ſeeke to haue his minde guarded with „ vertues, as his body with armed Souldiers; and if

is

it be pleasing to call these by their names, it is conuenient to know them by their natures; which (if I bee not deceiued) are to bee thus deciphered. *Affabilitie* without Affectation, least a partiall admittance keepe such next his person, as are noted with infamie, and a wilfull conniuency ouerpasse the great faults of his Officers. *Liberalitie* with Aduice, that his Reuenewes and Royalties may supply wantes without exactions, rather vpon necessitie vrging Beneuolences, then wantonnesse commaunding Impositions. *Magnificense* with Reposednesse, whereby the honour of the Court may extend to timely Princelinesse, either at the accesse of his owne Peeres, or entertainement of forraine Embassadors. *Mercie* with Discretion, least the Wicked insult through presumption, and Integritie complaine to see Vice vnpunished. *Recreation* with Iudgement, least Pleasures raigne without Limet, and the Common wealth remaine neglected and disconsolate. *Loyalty* with Secrecy, least sinne abroad purchase hatred at home, and like recompence cause Ielousie and Misdoubt to be depriuers of libertie. Concerning the troubles of disagreement, either in publicke or priuate hostillytie, he must haue *Depth of wisdome* to remember, respect, and foresee. *Height of Courage*, as well to embolden others, as defend himselfe, consídering many times challenges are made amongst Princes: and one mans death, is the preseruation of a Million of liues. *Largenes* of Bounty

" to honor, reward, and aduance, according to the
" well deseruing, and not opinnion of men. *Regarde*
" of Maiestie: that his state may strike a reuerence,
" and lonelynesse a desier: and though last named
" (yet the cheifest of account) obseruation of *Ori-*
" *zones*, wherby either hope of blessinges will de-
" taine them in good courses, or feare of Iudgment
" coerceate a bad disposition. These Iewells (noble
" Lords) are the Ornaments of Kings; whereof the
" fruition is not so plausible, as the want dangerous;
" such is the difference in greatnesse by discent and
" desert: but concerning my selfe, I am engaged al-
" ready in the like expectation of *Armenia*, and ty-
" ed to the necessitie of my fathers redemption; let
" me therfore neither betray your loues to negly-
" gence, nor entangle my selfe with such difficulty:
" but because your desirs shal not be altogether fru-
" strate, I doe thus aduise you. *Darius Artabanus*
" sonne a neighbour, a King and sufficient, yea so
" sufficient (that I need not exemplefie his vertues)
" matching with *Roxana Astiages* Daughter will in
" the match ouermatch all your troubles, and new
" fashion your mishappen gouernment; which if
" you admit, as vrged by my selfe, *Armenia* shall
" be for euer confederat, and *Anzitemus* an assu-
" red friend to *Persia*: besides, two such kingdomes
" vnited, will terrefie the greatest ill will, and make
" ample your mightinesse for euer.

To this, or the like purpose, did my speeches tend, whereby I somewhat pacefied the first en-

force-

forcement; but had a ſparing anſwere concerning *Roxana*: For there wanted not thoſe, which replyed, how her beautie and deſert merited better at my hands, then ſo ſlightly to intereſt another with the poſſeſſion of ſuch life, and excellency; whereupon *Zaleppo* a cheife peere of the Realme, either ſtomaching my careleſſeneſſe, or yet making me beleeue I ſhould not leaue them ſo vnprouided, haſted to the *Pallace*, and returned with the *Lady*, as if he ment to exprobrate my ſimplycitie, that would ouerpaſſe a matter of ſuch worth; and truely (moſt gratious *Brizaca*) ſuch was the goodlyneſſe of her perſon, and the appearance of other perfections, that an exact amoriſt would not haue wiſhed for better becomming: To be plaine, deuine influence ouerruleth mans purpoſes; For what a continuall preſence might haue wrought, I know not; but Fortune euer Ominous vnto me, (except in my now happines) intercepted this progreſſe of affection, and by the returne of *Aſtiages* with that Monſter of nature *Cleonidas*, whom I ſhall neuer name with patience, ouerturned both the foundation and the building of my deſires.

Aſtiages returneth with Cleonidas who brought Artabazes into Perſia.

For *Aſtiages* ſtomaching the indignitie of the reuolt, and his owne diſcomfiture, preſently fled to his ſhips (as he had before contriued) and putting into the maine *Caſpian* the next day encountred with this damnable aſſociate; betweene Whom for the time paſſed ſome difference, the one

one impeaching delay, whereby mischance Triumphed to his great discomforte: the other, excusing the matter by the Battaile with my father, and that he also heard *Adelphus* was returned into *Media*, which offered him leisure to the new rigging his ships and supplying his men: but when *Cleonidas* had fully conceiued the desaster of *Astiages*, he bad him quiet himselfe, and infused new life with the sight of *Artabazes* in Captyuitie, which the King tooke so passhionately that he confounded two contraries, ioy and anger togeather: For neither remembring his vertues, nor greatnesse, nor allowing the present magnanimity outfacing his misery, with a sullen abruptnesse he plainely tould him, that if at the first motion I did not deliuer vp the possession of *Susiana*, and depart quietly out of *Persia*: he would Torture him before my face in view of the Cittie: in which humour they Landed their Armie, and Soldierlike marched forward, surprising many places I had fortefied, till a timely alarum gaue notice of their pretences, and occationed expedition to intercept them.

But to decipher the variety of humours, which the accident wrought, were to be as tedious now, as they were troublesome then: Some vnder Colour of remorse began to vpbraied their disobedience, that so soone consented to the deposing of a King for a casuall effect of distemprature: some ignominiously cowards began already to prepare for a flight, and these the only bosters in security:

some

Some absolutely wicked respecting nothing but themselues, made a continuall reuoult to the stronger side, a polliticke preuention of their losses, though the obloquie remained: some with a kind of cunning spared both a reprehention of the enemie, and palpable flattery of the preuayler: some stomached the deiection of their houses, as rather wishing their owne aduancements, then repining at my successe: some neither hopefull to others, nor helpefull to themselues, onely wondred, that *Persia* should be so barren to elect a stranger ouer them; these men had willingnesse, but no power to doe hurt; some true Louers of the Common-wealth proclaimed mee Protector of the Realme, and maintained the charge of the Warre with their owne, and the Cities Treasure.

Now was I some what perplexed to be resident amongst so many vnstayed dispositions: yet vnwilling to receiue notice of euery slender occation, I applyed my selfe to the time, taking a generall Oth of the Cittie, wherein I reserued the hostages of diuers Noble men: besides *Roxana* remained as a pledge for my securytie, and seemed contented, so her fathers life might be spared: but not meaning to trust my selfe within a place, where death had a hundred wayes of trechery, nor desirous to be affrighted with the mutinis and turmoyles, to which the people vpon euery alteration are incident: I chose from amongst them

eight Thouſand of their Principall men, and mingling them with my owne forces, was aſſured no man durſt wiſper miſlike, nor ſlacke his manhood, when it came to the tryall: with theſe I encountred *Aſtiages* and determined to put all to the deciding of one day; which he tooke in very good part, and made me beleeue his reſolution correſponded: For preſently his Armie ſuffered a fourfold diuiſion, one part whereof attended the cariges, and ſecured certaine paſſages; the Reare was committed to the truſt of *Cleonidas*: the Battaile was ordred by *Pyragmon* a brother of *Zaleppos*, and the *Vann* (croſſing the method of former directions) impatience made *Aſtiages* himſelfe to conduct: When the ſkout Maſters of our Campe certefied thus much, I prepared accordingly, and would willingly haue giuen the firſt charge, in hope to ſingle out *Aſtiages* or *Cleonidas*: But I was not permitted to make vſe of ſuch forwardneſſe, becauſe as they ſayd they would not haſſard me in ſuch ſorte: ſo that *Alcaſtus* had the Honor of the firſt encounter, and the battailes in a manner ſtood idly outfaceing one another, by reaſon wherof I ſaw *Aſtiages* comming gallantly to the charge: he was eaſily knowne by a baſiliſke on the Top of his caſke Crouned and criſped, and Round about lay many liuing Creatures dead, out of his mouth iſſued a ſcrowle contayning this Mott, In *Viſu Mors*.

his

His Troope was well armed, appoynted; and as it ſhould ſeeme, encouraged: for they aſſaulted the ſtrongeſt *Cataphracts* flancking our foote, and performed actions worthy the beſt report; but too too preiudicate he was ſo quickly engaged, that Danger lifted vp her voyce, as if it came to tell him, Death was the reward of Tirany and Preſumption: But yet ſuch was his fortune, that exclayming on the fugitiue *Anzitemus*, the baniſhed *Anzitemus*, the traytor *Anzitemus*: *Anzitemus* quickly preſented him ſelfe, though neither fugitiue, baniſhed, nor traytor; and of purpoſe to rebate the wrath of the Souldiers (who by this time, had hewen him a peeces) offered a priuate Combate, if vpon the determination my Father might be deliuered, and the Articles of peace renued.

The cruell vnfortunate death of Arbazes Anzitemus father, in reueng whereof he followeth Cleonidas to Sea, and there encounnreth him, as in the firſt Chap. of the firſt Booke.

BVt as I expected the returne of ſome aſſurance of contentment, *Cleonidas* acquainted with *Aſtiages* diſtreſſe, haſtned to the place, and vngorging his venemous ſtomacke, ſuggeſted hee would ſtrike off my Fathers head, if I did not preſently ſet *Aſtiages* free. O Gods! that I liue to report my diſgraces, conſidering *Cleonidas* liued vnreuenged: For whether my impatience hindred the Organs of my voyce, or the Zeale of my well willers tranſported them to the enterprize, I know not; but I was not able by threats, intreatie, or promiſes, to preuent the miſchiefe which followed

followed: For they not admitting ſo childiſh a terrour, made at *Cleonidas*, & with ſome wounds enforced his retreate; the reſt ouercharging *Aſtiges*, gaue him neither leaue to repent, or exclaime: and not appeaſed with his death, added reproach to his fall: For a Brother of *Mulcaſſes* diſmembred the body, and threw the cut-off head at *Cleonidas* before vs all; who taking it in opprobrious manner, ſware hee would ſolemniſe his exequies with as equall Sacrifice: and in that impatience, made his paſſage through the Troopes, crying, Reuenge, Reuenge; and contrary to all manhood, or honour, poſted to his Tent, where the euer reſolute *Artabazes* was the ſubiect of his wrath, and ſhrunke vnder the burden of a ſauadge hand. In whoſe vntimely death, the caſe was the more lamentable, becauſe ſo ſufficient meanes, as I was intereſſed in, might rather warrant a recouerie, then ſuſpend his hopes. But why trifle I my Diſcourſe, when it is a courteſie to tell the worſt of a mans miſerie quickly? So ſoone as his perfidious hate had brought this Tragedie to a period, with a ſlender repentance hee wiſhed it vndone, and ſent mee word of the remorce; which I taking in ſcorne, found the meſſage rather to exaſperate my reuenge: in which moode, I haſted to the enemy of my ſoule; who miſtruſting him ſelfe, fled to his Shippes, and quickly make *Perſia* aſhamed of their truſt repoſed in his vallour: but the moſt of his fleete was vnready, whereby hee was enforced

The death of Aſtiages.

Cleonidas killeth Artabazes.

10

to take ſuch as he found, and ordred the reſt to follow with ſpeed.

Now had I time to condemne the trechery, ſuſpect ſome plot of miſchiefe, blame the vnable companie to intercept him, exclaime on the cowardice of the Souldiers, and make faultie I knew not whom, or what: Yet at laſt, Aduice recalled mee to ſuppoſe, that deferring would occaſion him to be the better prouided; and if hee once eſcaped, to bee ſetled in his ſtrength; it would prooue an aduenture of more danger and difficultie to diſſeiſe him: I therefore allowed Direction no further ſcope, but made after with all ſpeede, and embarked in the reſt of *Cleonidas* owne Ships, which we enforced to ſerue our turne: But by that time extremitie was a little moderated, I began to caſt many doubts, as how *Cleonidas* was attended, which way his reſolution accelerated, and whether our owne company were ſure to vs or no. Theſe particulars by examining the Mariners, and ſome others attending in the Shippes, were ſoone anſwered, that *Cleonidas* had eight Shippes, and would with out doubt, make toward the dry *Iland*. Other queſtions were of leſſe importance, and yet expected their ſolutions: ſo wee caſt many of them ouer board, leruing as few to conſume or hinder (as wee could) and ſeeing wee poſſeſſed twelue, nothing was thought on, but a fortunate encounter; which ere the next Sunne had mounted to the height of his maieſtie, bade vs bee our

owne

owne Iudges of: for wee ouertooke the Pirate, who miſtaking vs for his owne Company, ſomewhat ſlacked the winde, and in a manner taried our approach.

But when our defiance produced a ſtrange contrarietie, neuer made his miſcheuous conceit any ſhew of barreanneſſe, till now: For out of all comfort either by conuention or conuulſion to auoide the imminent perill, hee blaſphemed both Heauen, Earth, and Sea, ſtorming at the accident, as though hee had been betrayed to deſtruction, which almoſt made him open the dore to death with his owne hands: yet beeing remembred by ſome one better conſiderat of the many changes depending on the actions of men, hee recalled both
" Iudgement and Courage, and began the fight in
" ſuch manner, as you ſee a Feaſt marſhalled to
" make the ſtatelyer ſhew by good order: For our
" loſſes were equall a long time; and as a man fell a-
" mongſt them, another dropped amongſt vs: as their Slinges and Arrowes endamaged vs, our Stones and Engines ſlaughtered them: as their Fire-workes were throwne with effect, ours were not caſt without proofe; at laſt, the ſmalleſt Barckes felt the ieconuenience of many dangerous leakes, and irrecouerably ſuncke with their Burdens before our faces; whereupon I commaunded to grapple, fearing indeed the Sunne had fled from our wretchednesſe, and diſdained to ouerlooke ſo ruthfull a ſpectacle: Beſides, the Night like an vnwelcome

welcome gueſt comming both vnlookt-for, and vnbidden, approched to diſappoynt vs, and made vs enforce our ſelues ſeeming moſt braueſt, when wee could leaſt hurt; and in the end of our furie beginning a new worke of woefulneſſe. But *Cleonidas* either of deſpayring the ſeuent, or loth to diſproportion his tyranous minde, euen when Death ſeemed weary, commaunded to ſet fire of all, and heaw the Shippes in peeces; whereupon followed ſo lamentable a *Cataſtrophe*, as I thought no man happy, but ſuch whom death had abſented from the vnhappineſſe, which many howers continued in pitifull cryes, and heart-renting exclamations; nor wanted there horrible ſcriches, and execrable *Apoſtacy*. To this the fire added a woonderfull terrour, appearing as if it determined to quench the *Ocean*; but moſt aptly I thought it a pollecie of Deſtruction, to light vs to Hell. And truly (my moſt gracious *Brizaca*,) though now dearer to mee, then my deareſt life, yet were I not ſure of the felicity collated by your ſelfe, I would not againe behold ſuch another *Stratagem*, no not in hope of an other *Brizaca*: For I am certaine not foure men liued, though none eſcaped what was ten times worſe then death; and how ſome deuine influence ouerlooked me, I know not; but I well remember, vnleſſe I ſhould haue haled death with my owne hands, it could come no faſter toward mee: Yet it was my chaunce to light on a broken peece of *Cleonidas* owne Ship, hauing no

Cleonidas and Anzitemns fight at Sea as in the beginnig.

other comfort, then in the meditation of my laſt end, reſoluing neuer to pollute my then cleane thoughts with any dregs of worldly compounds. In this manner *Placandus* founde mee, and within a while againe I loſt my ſelfe: but how that recouery chanced beyonde my deſert, you can beſt tell, that haue payde the ranſome of my redemption.

Now by the bleſſed eſcape of thoſe dangers, I ſweare (quoth *Brizaca*) you haue affrighted mee with this Diſcourſe; But ſeeing it is your pleaſure to take hold of a new Comfort, and ſuppoſe mee the *Antidote* of theſe greeuances: Let your Hopes be neuer interdicted; and curſed be the occaſion of infringing our deſires: which was vttered with ſuch vehemency, as if true Loue determined to tell the paſſengers, heere was his Manſion: For the teares diſtilled from her eyes, as if the hart melting within had ſought out a paſſage for the moyſture: So haue I ſeene thee ſweete Roſe leaues quickly couered with a Still, and feeling a change by the working heate, drop out his delicate ſauour amongſt vs. When *Anzitemus* ſaw thoſe excellent Lampes filled ſo vnkindly, hee ſtepped vnto her, and meant to dry them with his kiſſes: but not preuayling, he put his owne vpon them like Spunges to ſoake them vp.

While this extaſie continued, diuers matters were debated betwixt the King and the other Princes, who well pleaſed in *Anzitemus* diſcouerie

uerie, & transported to the admiration of his Vertues by considering his worth, presently made offer of them selues and powers, to the effecting whatsoeuer was expedite for his Honour. Yet (quoth *Trezoboro*) seeing *Cleonidas* hath commenced so often vntoward occasion of remembrance, let vs exact of your kindnesse a relation of his estate and condition. What can I deny such desert? (answered *Anzitemus*) and though you haue taxed mee with a dangerous imposition, as that I must aggrauate my sorrow with the repetition of the cause, and awake Impartialitie to say the truth of my Enemie: yet doe I well vouchsafe to be thus his Historiographer.

The story of Cleonidas and Artaxeta: with Armenus takeing her pare possessing the Kingdome and denominating the Country.

AFter the aged *Sagarenus* of *Thessaly* was made acquainted with the honourable expedition of the *Ionialists* to *Taurica*, (where *Dianas* siluer Tree exposed such honour and reward in the atcheeuement) in manner of a fatherly exhortation he counselled his sonne *Armenus* to make tryall of Fortunes curtesie amongst the rest, who more forward, then fortunate prepared for the iorney, and was enrowled amongst the other Princes to accompany *Telpinas* (whom the casting of Lotts had made their Captiane in the enterprise:) Now by that time the Soldiers had taken possession of the Harbour, and *Telpinas* was newly setled in *Cherona* aduising how

to proceed: *Artaxata* a *Queene* extract from the greateſt bloud of *Cilitia* and the ſpatious Countryes vnder the Mount *Taurus*, came in perſon to the Court, where this Noble aſſemblie kept reſidence, and had by this time filled all *Aſia* with wonder at the attempt:) and like a Prince in whom a magnanimous Countenance ſeemed the Ornament of an *Heroïcke* ſpirit with her aſſociat affabilitie, neither manlike, nor effeminate thus excuſed herſelfe.

" I am come to thee (thou Honorable *Gre-*
" *cian*) induced, as much by the hope of thy ver-
" tues, as fame of thy actions: For this is ſubiect to
" alteration by the reporters partiallytie: that re-
" maineth like a ſquared die euery way caſt ſtanding
" vpright, I will therfore firme this Anchor on the
" ſufficiency therof, not doubting but to moue ſome
" ſpirit to add to his owne Honor and my glory,
" when he ſhall vnderſtand a woman, a Virginn, a
" Queene, is wronged and in diſtreſſe: For true
" Nobillity is decipherd in thoſe famous exploites
" of releeſe, not in vaine oſtentation or enticementes
" of ambytion: So long then hath my fathers
" houſe continued in proſperitie, that either the
" Godes enuied our eſtabliſhed mightyneſſe, or
" Fortune (ſtomaching the razing and ſubuertion
" of *Coloſſeum* a Temple once dedicated to her) con-
" ſented to haue this neglect or rather contempt pu-
" niſhed, and performed it with the indignytie of a
" Trayterous reuolt, at ſuch a time, as when Maie-

ſtie

flie ſcorned the preſumption of a Subiect, and Loue fled from an vnkind Compulſion: For no ſooner was my Fathers Exequies celebrated, but my eſtate bade mee ſtep into the Chaire of Controulment, wherein I prepared to ſit with the applauſe of all my Subiectes, had not *Cleonidas*, an ancient enemie to the peace of many Prouinces, perſwaded an inuiolate perpetuity, if I would admit of his loue, which (as he ſayd) proceeded from the fountaine of true Deſire, and acknowledging my Vertues: But I tooke it otherwiſe; that the greedineſſe of Ambition had taught him a politicke leſſon of paſhion, and rather haſted him to counterfeit his liking; which made mee impugne the forwardnes, and not without ſome tearmes of reprehention (yet farre from reproch) diſmiſſed him, as if I expected a further corroboration of my eſtate. At laſt vrged againe with a kind of preſumption, or rather careleſneſſe of my Royaltie, in a quiet manner of diſdayne I aſſured him, I neither feared his Mallice, nor regarded his Fauour; but in deſpight of Confederats, would haue him an exemplary obedience to the reſt of my Subiects.

This he tooke in great reproch, and ſoone made apparant the Barrenneſſe of the ground, wherin the Seedes of his loue were ſet: For vnder Colour of indignitie to the Realme, that ſuch a iuriſdiction, and ſo many worthy men ſhould be tyed to the wilfulneſſe of a woman, he rayſed a dangerous

Cleonidas conderateh with Colphurnus a Gyant,

" faction againſt me, and for the better countenan-
" cing his Treaſons ſeduced, and with great ſummes
" of Mony hired *Colphurnus* the Giant of *Taurus* to
" be his Colleauge: a man or rather a monſter re-
" ſpecting nothing but diſorder, and louing no crea-
" ture ſaue himſelfe: a man neuer terrefied with pro-
" degies, allowing religion and conſcience but a
" pollycie to reſtraine the forwardneſſe of ſome
" brauely diſpoſed: a man implacable in his furie,
" and ouer inſulting if chance or miſchance afforded
" him ſuperiorytie: To conclude, ſuch a one, as
" ſcorned my ſimplicity, and mocked *Cleonidas* am-
" bytion: yet gaue winges to this attempt, rather
" that his owne greatneſſe might appeare, then for
" any willingneſſe to aſſiſt the other. Thus in ouer-
" daring manner they came once againe to demaund
" my conſent, which I proteſt I now reſerued more
" charylie, and reiected him as rediculous, to ſee a
" man profeſſe kindneſſe, and expreſſe hate, ſue for
" fauour, and threaten deſpight: wiſh peace, and
" procure Warre: propoſe goodneſſe, and diſpoſe
" miſchiefe: plead for remorſe, and determine re-
" uenge, vſing me as ſome in-deſcreete fathers their
" Children, who many times beat them without
" cauſe, alleadging Conſcience, and the neceſsity of
" correction: But when *Colphurnus* heard my de-
" niall, (onely maligning that his preſence wrought
" no better with mee) hee ſtormed beyonde all the
" limits of reaſon, and rayled at mee, as if the name
" of a *Queene* had neuer been heard of: which
though

though I was not ſo happy to preuent, yet was I
ſo bold to diſclayme. Proud beaſt (ſayd I) whom
the Heauens haue excluded, and the Earth ſuppo-
ſeth burdenſome, though thy Senſes neuer parti-
cipated any ciuill ſound, and the name of Vertue
had onely the eſtimation of ſuch a word; yet
how durſt thou neglect the due regard to a Prince,
which the vnreaſonable creatures in their kinde
fulfill? But ſeeing Nature ſometimes yeeldeth to
Errours, that the perfect may be diſcerned by the
vnperfect, I allow thee a Monſter amongſt Men;
and yet reſolue, neither ſhall thy body eſcape vn-
puniſhed, nor thy ſoule (if I may ſuppoſe it in ſuch
deformity) vnpardoned. Thinke (honourable
Lords) this much impeached his patience, and
haſted them to trifle no longer; whereupon they
ſpoyled my people, depopulated the Country,
ſubuerted my Townes, and weakned my Forces;
which with my owne perſon, they had vtterly de-
feated, had I not tooke aduantage of the ſtrength
of a Caſtle, wherein I remaine at this inſtant be-
ſieged; and vnleſſe ſome fortunate Aſpect dee
heere looke vpon mee, I muſt ſubmit to the vn-
towardneſſe of a heart-vexing neceſsitie, (as for
the place, I ſuppoſe it for a time impregnable in
the continuance of their loyalties poſſeſsing it,) and
not without ſome ſtrange ſtratagem, or ſurrender
to be quickly commaunded. Now ſuppoſe much
more might haue been ſpoken, and much better:
but if I be vnderſtood, I am ſatisfied; and if aſsiſted,

com-

comforted otherwiſe.

Armenus Sonne of Sagarenus aſſiſteth the Queene Artaxata.

Nay (quoth the *Heroïck Armenus*) by your patience Royall Queene no more; and their Lordly leaues no leſſe? then what ſoeuer the Gods haue imparted vnto me, to proſtrate it before you; if then you dare commit ſo priſeleſſe a Iewell to ſo ſlender a Guard, my fayth and endeauors ſhall ſurpaſſe outward meanes, and yet I make no doubte the Iuſtice of your cauſe, and the trophe of my reward ſhall incite me to effectuate any exployte within the reach of performance, ſo that if euer action were attempted for reaſons ſake, heere is reaſon vpon reaſon, and he an vnreaſonable coward, that dare not make ſo honorable a progreſſion: By this time her countenance was inueſted with a new forme, and her gallant demeanor bred a deſier in the reſt to ſend fame on their Errands: But *Artaxata* vrged no further, nor troubled *Telpinas* with other importunitie, more then that ſhe gratified him for his vertuous kindneſſe and care for alotting a reaſonable company to attend her, and ſending a Meſſenger into *Theſſaly*, to acquaint the aged *Sagarenus* with his ſonns fortune.

In this Iollytie made *Artaxata* her returne, and becauſe ſome queſtions may be enforced, concerning the Iorny, let me anſwere; ſuch was her imparadiſed beautie, attractiue comlineſſe, gallant youth, ſweete demeanor, and all gracing vertues that he ſeemed rather rauiſhed, then enamored: ſuch

ſuch againe was his ſeemly perſon, firmneſſe of manhood, portly behauiour, delightſome countenance, & all helping Courage, that ſhe remained rather ouercome, then pleaſed: So that with thankeſgiuing to the Gods for this happy acquaintance, and ſeemely deſires to be acceptable one to another; they concluded the Sunpathy of conditions and liking, ſhould tye the indiſſoluble knot of affection: yet left he not thus, but with a ſerious enquiry of her affayres made way to better conceite of his wiſedome: Whereupon ſhe acquainted him with the peoples liberty, and the ſeeldome matched obedience in the libertie: the factions amongſt the better ſort, the alliance and priuiledges of her owne family, the manner of her fathers gouerment, and laſtly made a diſtinction betweene men Enobled for the Court, and enabled for the Common-wealth: ſhe alſo imparted the abillity, ſtate and conditions of *Cleonidas*, the beginning of his loue, and the proceeding of her troubles. But (quoth the reſpectiue *Armenus*) by what meanes eſcaped you the enemy in this flight, I will tell you that too, ſayed the Queene. *Armenus & Artaxata contract.*

After the report of your Greekiſh expedition had liberally acquainted vs with ſo many Princes, ſo many men of Vallure, as accompanyed *Thepinas* in the enterpriſe, and were then reſident in *Taurica*: one time amongſt others, as I was obſequious in my ſacrifice with many impetrations, that they might be propityatory, and many many,

deuotions to expiate my offences, me thought the *Penates* beckned a silence, and bad me hast to *Cherona* for redresse, wherin sure they determined my deliuery, for though the time of the yeere almost warranted better weather, yet that night and all the next day fell such a Snow, as if the heauen ment to shew vs some varietie: now by reason of a vault letting in the Riuer to the vse of the pallace, I conceiued how to escape by couering my selfe and and some few others in whight Linnen, and trulie I will not now boast, but with an extraordinary life did I then passe vpon the Bancke, which the enemie had cast out of their trenches, at such time, as for very pittie they would not put foorth a *Sentinell* to watch, and so escaping to a place of more trust, then strength, I made such prouision as my hast permitted. But how now shall we enter (replyed *Armenus*,) As for that? answered *Artaxata*, the Influence, which hath hetherto ouer ruled; will not leaue this worke imperfect: Now by the protection, which followes vs, you haue ouer reached me (sayed *Armenus*) in resolution, yet if it please you not to presage mee ill by feare or misdoubt, I haue thus deuised.

According to your description of *Colphurnus*, I geather his Courage and strength to be great, but his presumption and pride to be more, wherein such men goe forward in immanitie, not that they are vnuanquishable, but because opinions is terrefied with

with their hugeneſſe; and indeed reſemble ſuch
Weedes, which while you handle daintily, will
ſting till you ſmart; but vſe them with violence,
they looſe their force and efficacie. So that to of-
fer priuate combate (which I am ſure his inſolency
will rather deride, then reiect) may be the eaſieſt
courſe (though you may ſuſpect not the ſafeſt) to
reuerſe your feares: For if I ſhrinke vnder the
burden of a heauy diſaſter, perſwade your ſelf the
old *Sagarenus* will draw all *Greece* to your ayde:
or els your patience muſt proue an vnkind vertue:
if I peruayle, what would you deſire more; but that
I ſhould preuaile? Heere a ſtill manner of behaui-
our continued awhile, but at laſt brake vp with a
yeelding chearefulneſſe: for it rather proceeded
from the amaſement at his Vertue, then deſpaire
of the ſucceſſe; and yet was there great diſparitie
betweene them. Thus they approched the Ene-
mies Trenches, who euery day expected ſurren-
der, or compoſition; little ſuſpecting that the
Queene was abſent, or that theſe new-come
troopes were worthy the name of a Supply; im-
puting it rather to their madneſſe and folly, which
would wilfully put them ſelues into danger with-
out hope of recouery: Which when *Armenus*
perceiued, and that they forbore violence againſt
them, the next day like a Herrold of defiance; and
yet ſummoning a Parlee, hee in this manner try-
ed their patience.

Although (yee abuſed *Cilitians*) mans maliti-

" ouſneſſe hath put in practiſe infinite preſtigious
" deuiſes, in ſo much that they haue not deſiſted to
" rebell againſt Heauen, and with monſtrous *Apo-*
" *ſtacie* to fight againſt the Gods; yet haue not thoſe
" faults paſſed without puniſhment: For ſubuerſions
" of Kingdomes, ſtratagems amongſt Eſtates, alte-
" rations of Common-wealths, maſſacres of Armies,
" and murdring one another, haue followed; witnes
" the *Titans*, the tranſlation of the firſt Monarchy,
" and ſuch infinite Warres as haue filled the world
" with teares and reproch; and ſhall no doubt, ap-
" peare as an inſtance amongſt your ſelues, for trea-
" ſon, immanity, and perfidiouſneſſe. But why tri-
" fle I with circumſtances? It is to thee *Cleonidas*
" I ſpeake; it is againſt thee thou Tirant *Colphurnus*
" I enneigh: the one a wicked Rebell to Souerainty
" and Beauty; the other, a monſtrous enemie to
" Maieſtie and Vertue; and both as ſcandals and
" reproches to Vallour and Honour. Was it euer
" allowed, that a Subiect durſt infringe the Lawes of
" Dutie and Alleagence againſt a Woman, a Vir-
" gin, a Queene? Was it euer heard, that a man of
" Vallour, durſt offer violence (without impeach-
" ment of villany) to ſuch a perſon, whoſe vertuous
" Renowne hath mooued the Heauens to pitty her,
" as though you had been framed to terrifie the
" world, and ſent from Hell as Monſters in nature?
" If it be ſo, by all the names of pretious Goodnes;
" by all the power of deuine Beauty, by all the
" worth of peareleſſe *Artuxata*, I coniure you re-

turne

turne from whence you came: If not ſo; I chal-
lenge the one to repent his Inſolencie; the other,
to reforme his Crueltie. But if my ſpeeches re-
ſemble a loathſome Potion, or ſeeme vnſeaſo-
nable, as attempting to compaſſe with a ſlender
Oratorie, what many Thouſands of armed men
haue fayled in. Know then, that the royall *Ar-*
taxata taking compaſsion of her Subiectes, and
Kingdome, and to auoyde further effuſion of
blood, offreth by mee the firſt borne of *Sagare-*
nus of *Theſſalia*, a priuate Combat; wherein ſhee
ſubmitteth to the euent, ſo *Cleonidas* doe there-
vpon ſurceaſe the Warre. This hath the Queene
concluded with princely ſtedfaſtneſſe. This doth
the Grecian *Armenus* confirme with reſolute wil-
lingneſſe.

Armenus offereth priuate Combate.

HEere the Soldiers ſtood amaſed betwixt re-
morce of their owne faults, and feare of their
commaunders: but *Cleonidas* ſtormed the more,
as remembring the deſert of the *Queene*, and his
misfortune to be reiected, or diſappointed: and
Colphurnus raged beyond reaſon and (according
to the inſolency of ſuch perſons,) yeelded to the
motion though there came Tenn ſuch Knights,
wiſhing the diſpatch, leaſt his fury might put in
practiſe further diſtemprature: But litle needed ſuch
haſt to deſtruction. For the next morning came
Armenus into the field like a Knight well moun-
ted, and orderly prouided, expecting *Colphurnus*,
who made the more haſt, by reaſon *Cleonidas*

found the Armie in feares at the accident: but when he perceiued the Gyant might not Ride, becauſe of his highneſſe, he quickly yeelded his Horſe freedome, and very gallantly attempted the onſet on foote: beginning the Battaile with that brauery, that the ſtanders by expreſſed a very gladneſſe to be eye witneſſes of ſuch ſpirit and life; yet when the contention grew betwixt wary nimbleneſſe and furious ſtrength, and that the continuance detained them in ſuſpition, it encreaſed both pittie and amaſement; the one, leaſt ſuch a loſſe of Vertue ſhould chance by ouermatching: the other to ſee a Giants force equalled; who indeed preſſed *Armenus* with vnkindly ſtrokes, but that *Heroïcke* dexteritie auoyded the ſeaſure, & ſometime gaue him liberty and time to wound the other, whereby he ſpent much blood, and increaſed his impatience ſo farre, that he faſtned a blow which ſtrucke the *Prince* to the ground, to the terrour of both the Armies; who in their heartes wiſhed him fortunate, and ſhooted for ioy at his recouerie: of which *Armenus* tooke the aduantage, and ſeeing there was no enduring long, aduentured a cloze, and had the chaunce to rin him vnder the ſhort Ribbes, and ſo made roome both for Death and Victorie to deuide themſelues: Whereat *Cleonidas* blaſphemed Heauen & Earth, rather now ſhewing his willingneſſe, then ſufficiencie to maintaine the quarrell.

Colphurnus death.

By this time *Artaxata* diſcouered herſelfe, and like

like the Sunne clearing the interpoſition of thicke Cloudes appeared the more glorious: ſo the Souldiers yeelded to mercy, and the people ſubmitted as being before enforced: and becauſe they would giue notice of their dutie for a beginning, with the ſame Water that drane the Mill, they drowned the Mill, quickly chaſing *Cleonidas* in his retreat; and taking him by force, brought him bound to the Queene; who at *Armenus* interceſsion, gaue him life, liberty, and ſerled him in former eſtate, little ſuſpecting, that courteſie to a Traytor, is a thankeleſſe office, and moſt commonly giueth but occaſion of further hate and repining.

Cleonidas priſoner and reſtored.

With this beginning was the whole Kingdome pleaſed, ſo that the *Queene* might publiſh her will with ſucceſſe, and *Armenus* ſucceed with publication & good will, poſſeſſing thereby a gratious *Artaxata*, and a ſpatious Country, which by way of recompence and ſatasfaction was contented to change her old name, and to be called *Armenia* for his ſake: In this as a thankfull ſtewarad vnder an Honorable Lord he dedicated two eſpetiall places *Sagarena* and *Artaxata* after his Fathers and Wifes name, which in time grew to be Ritch, famous, and Populous Citties: but aſſured of the diſſolution of any ſtate without gouernment, he eſtabliſhed Lawes, as well to detaine the people in obedience, as to maintaine his owne prerogatiue, to which (becauſe they ſeemed ſtrict and contrary to former Cuſtomes) hee had much a doe to bring them,

Armenus is king and nameth the Country Armenia.

them, but at last, by polliticke insinuation, and true magnanimity the great men applauded his carriage and temprature, and the people like their shadowes yeelded to what they allowed: so that few misliked, and such as misliked durst not complaine, vntill *Cleonidas* rebelled againe, as reprehending his owne baseneſſe, that he had been beholding to a stranger for his life, but a suffitient discomfiture made him fayle in the attempt, and his death warranted *Armenus* peace and establishment.

Cleonidas rebelleth againe and dyeth.

This had yeelded a full recompence indeed, if he could haue preuented a double mischance: The one in suffering *Cleonidas* the sonne to enioy his fathers bad conditions with his estate; the other in being deuided from his Royall Queene, whose life was now brought to an vntimely period by a heart vexing sickneſſe; but heerein some supernaturall power wrought for the best, because now Childleſſe, he after matched with *Tolmiranda* the *Assirian Sophy*, by whom he enioyed the fruites of his body in great towardlineſſe, and continued the rest of his time in a gratious peace, had not time ripened the wicked disposition of *Cleonidas* the sonne, and hate as it were innated within him enforced many exorbitant actions, setting againe the kingdome in combustion, which at last was better ordred and preuented. For his places of refuge were leueled with the ground, his Lands and wealth confiscate, his Allies and associates vnder

Cleonidas the Sonne is banished Armenia and becommeth a Pirate.

areſt,

areſt, and himſelfe exiled the Kingdome, who o-therwiſe might haue liued a glory too the king-dome.

Theſe warres and *Armenus* life had end to-geather, wherupon my father *Artabazes* began his Royall raſe at ſuch time, as this *Cleonidas* enter-tained a conceite of reuenge by this courſe of Pi-racie, wherein thirty yeares continuance made him an archmaſter; and cuſtome in wickedneſſe ſo blinded him, that great faults were reputed ſlender, and ſmall ones not ſo much as imperfecti-ons: but the chiefeſt proppes too this wicked life, were the confederacie of many Princes, and his owne wealth vniuſtly amaſſed, with which in this latter time he maintained thirty well appointed Ships, and amongſt other *Stratagems* (as you haue heard) was beholding to the warth full *Nemeſis* for *Artabazes* loſſe, but whether deuine Iuſtice tooke my cauſe in hand, I know not. For the beſt part of my Fortune extended to ſee him curſing and rag-ing amidſt the ouerraging Billowes.

Anzitemus declareth his fortune with Roxana the heyre of Per-ſia: and how he was pre-uented from Marrying her by reaſon of his purſu-ing Cleoni-das at Sea.

AT this *Period Anzitemus* made a ſtoppe, and king *Zalby* with the Princes acknowledged the delight of the ſtory: but the great affai-res in hand importuned a further matter then diſcourcing, wherupon it was concluded, that the moſt of them ſhould accompany him into *Armenia*, as well to ſecure his eſtate there, as to

contriue, how *Trezoboro* might purchaſe his reconſiliation with *Mengrelius*: becauſe if it were effected, it muſt be done by *Anzitemus* and *Briſacas* meanes; but ſhe finding, how this buſineſſe would detaine them awhile togeather, ment belike to make ſome vſe of the ſpare time, and therfore like a true Louer, ſtepped into the firſt path of Ielouſie, & could not forget the ſhort, and paſſhionate deſcription of *Roxana*, which cauſed her to vſe a little cunning in the matter, and by making pittie a branch of vertue, ſhe queſtioned with him of matters of Gouernment, of Geneologies, of Petigrees, what became of *Mitrea Aſtiages* Mother; and laſtly, as if it fell in by chance of diſcourſe, of *Roxanas* yeeres, how he ſatiſfied the Princes, and how he could neglect ſuch a proffer, as the mightie *Perſia* contented? My only content (replyed *Anzitemus*) miſtruſt no idle diſpoſition: For deuine appoyntment hath reſerued vs one for another: yet will I aſſure you, ſuch was, and I hope (I may hope) ſuch is the preeminence of her beautie and louelyneſſe, that I proteſt excepting the incomparable *Brizaca*, ſhe liueth peereleſſe, and well deſerued a better regard, then my buſineſſe permitted; and becauſe you haue ſturred conceite, and by a Rauiſhing preſence encreaſed that ſweete delight, which your company euer affoordeth: I will once be humorous in a ſlender deſcription of her, ſo the louely *Brizaca* finde not too many faults, & apply that to her ſelſe now, which

which I am sure might be allowed *Roxana* then,

What Cunning can depaint her prayses foorth,
In whom appeared such exceeding worth:
The outward substance all at once behold,
And thinke the Gods a secret to vnfold:
Each part apart commend; then Nature will
Affoord thee choyse of her approoued skill:
The Head resembled some rich golden Spheare,
Which all the chiefest Lines aloft did beare:
Yet round about the Paralels did meet;
So fell her beauteous Lockes euen to her feet:
The Face it selfe scarse durst a curious eye
Watch at the full: yet there we might espye
Fauour and Loue ioyne hand in hand togeather,
To welcome a rare Guest Perfection thither?
This made her smile, & blush: and blushing smile,
(The lookers on deceiued all the while,
As though two colours had for mastry strouen,
And White and Crimson been togeather wouen.)
The Necke did any counterfeite surpasse
In outward shew: for Princely life this was;
Shewing a way where Cupid *vsd to stand,*
Telling the lookers on, Venus *owne right hand,*
Cast vp those pretty Mounts, whose sides betweene
A pleasant Vally keepes delight vnseene,
Till it conduct thee to a bending Hill
Made like an Iuory Arch by curious skill,
Faire hanging ouer a well fashioned Dore,
Wherein are hid ten thousand loyes and more:

The discription of Roxana.

Yet Chaſtitie holdes ſure both Key and Lock,
Vnwilling that the Gods them ſelues ſhould knock,
For though Gods vſe to Paradiſe to goe,
Yet did they heere a Priuiledge beſtow,
That none might enter againſt Vertues minde,
Leaſt forc'd admittance prooue the cauſe vnkinde.
Her Body bolt vpright in comely grace
Outmatched Pallas *for a ſtately pace:* (*thought*
Mounted on Horſebacke, you would ſure haue
Bellona *had ſome gallant Battaile fought:*
Marching on foote, Diana *could not bee*
Amongſt her Nimphs *more gallanter to ſee.*
With theſe, her yeares were like a timely Spring,
Which in an ouer-ioying Hope did bring
Her Bloſſoms foorth, all happineſſe aſſuring
To him more happy in the ſoyles manuring.
With theſe her Vertues did proportionate
The qualities belonging to the ſtate
Of high Magnificenſe, that we might know,
Shee was ordained a Princes *pace to goe.*
With theſe, a Kingdome was a mighty Dower,
A Kingdome full of Riches, Pompe, and Power:
Then thinke I had good cauſe to wiſh her well,
Who did with ſuch great Priuiledge excell.

I proteſt (quoth *Brizaca*) you haue prayſed her well; but I rather allow it for a cuſtome of Idleneſſe, then Neceſsitie, and finde it vnbefitting to Iudgement to admit of ouerpalpable Flattery.

What call you Flattery (replyed *Anzitemus?*)

Aſſure

Assure your selfe, that the Gods framing Man to commaund all the Creatures vnder the Sunne, neither shuffled vp their workmanship, nor were so careleſſe afterward, but with a great regarde sent him foorth to publish their glory; and for that purpose gaue him prerogatiue of excellencie both in body and minde. This especially appeareth in your selues, to whom they haue vouchsafed deuotion, as finding time, and your owne vertues to perfect the worke, which they but began: And from hence proceedeth our resemblance of this outward substaunce, to a rich Treasure house made to secure more richer Wealth: Now, as Wealth is dispersed ouer the world to vse and good order, and without that lyeth hid like Earth within the ground: So your selues are left in the world to comfort and benefit, according to the fortune of him, that possesseth you to happy purpose. Heere then resteth the cunning and grace, in the meanes of the seisure, which I auouch is first wrought by the instrument, the Tongue: For though some haue made a principle, that a Womans Eye doth guide her Witte, yet vnlesse occasion be offred to discouer the liking, what good can follow. But to speake more generally; Are not Presents, faire Entreaties, and the causes mouing (your deserts) which must be prayſed, the ordinarie meanes of winning all Women? And are not all these like dead Ashes without liuing conference, besides the necessitie of conuersation, and

A circumstantial commendation of pleasing conference.

Presents, prayers, praises winne women.

the true regard of Natures excellencies in you alloweth vertuous courſes to obtaine your fauours; which howſoeuer is determined, is yet begun with proteſtation; and when it extendeth to great perſons, compelleth a further ſearch, then in common Courſes: For neuer was *Miſanthropos* nor Tyrant ſo implacable, but beauty hath reduced: neuer was Beaſt ſo furious, but man hath tamed: Neuer was any thing ſo ſtrong, but truth hath ouercome: and how? by reaſon and ſweete enforcement. Belike then (anſwered *Brizaca*) you ſuppoſe vs ſo ſimple, that we delight in vaine ſpeeches; and becauſe in Curteſie we entertaine communication, and would not altogeather outcountenance you with diſdaine; we are therfore to be carryed away with flightneſſe. (Farre be it from my fraileſt immagination (replyed *Anzitemus*) but to proportionate withall reuerence your vertues, yet vnleſſe it be amongſt Peſants, or wretched Parentes that frame contracts by endenture, where loue melteth with the Waxe, and weareth with the Parchment, I ſee no reaſon, but to ſue for good-will, and practiſe the beſt meanes to eſtabliſh (the happieſt life) contentment: As for Princes, though they make no Prentiſhippes of their loues, yet in the violence are they more paſſhionate, then another, like a ſtrong body put to more paine in ſickneſſe, then a weake. But ſay there is inequallitie of perſons, as many times it chanceth, (for Poets make loue blind,) I hope then the inferiour perſon

perſon applaudeth his Fortune, and ſtudieth with the helpes of art, nature, and induſtry to demeane himſelfe. For it were ridiculous, nay inhumane; to ſee a ſottiſh-man vſe preſumption toward you without inſinuation and conſent, which I neuer will eſteeme happy, if there be not a preparing by diſcreete parle: beſides, loue looſeth his ſweeteſt pleaſure without appearance of difficultie; Indeed (anſwered the halfe yeelding *Brizaca*) I thinke of an vnfained tongue as an excellent inſtrument to worke with, yet muſt no man goe about a Building without other prouiſion: For the greateſt deceite is ſhaddowed by ſmooth Oratory, as we ſound the deepeſt places in the calmeſt Channels. Not vnlikely ſaid *Anzitemus*, but becauſe a villaine doth a miſcheife with a Candell, ſhall we therfore vſe no light? doe not ſo conclude: For I am reſolued, that both contract of Maryage, and diſcouery of fancy are Dull enforcements without lybertie of ſpeech, and ceremonious complement: therfore blame me not for prayſing *Roxana*, and ratefying, ſhe was a deſeruer of all iuſtifiable deſires: yet I proteſt the ſorrow for her father, and her duety in the ſame, made me to ſtudy to pacefie her Coraſiues, rather then diſplay the Coulours of delight; and when I was vrged to ſolicite a new Courſe (which a meſſenger from *Artabanus* to pleaſe my ſelfe emboldned) thereturne of *Aſtiages* with *Cleonidas* quight diuerted me, and ſo I reaſſure you, ſhe was vnacquainted with my thoughts,

thoughts, and left to be a Lady of wonderfull expectation.

Anzitemus preparth to goe into his owne Kingdome of Armenia & after to present Trezoboro to the Emperor Mengrelius.

IN this manner did some dayes post after their forefathers, the spare time bestowed in acceptable communication to the better strengthning their loues; and the rest in serious matters for the dispatch of their busines, wherein *Anzitemus* after a little debating, went effectually to worke, desiering a loane of Fiftie thousand pound, and a generall League for the entercourse of Merchants; as for the kind proffers of the *Princes* to accompany him into *Armenia*, hee woul not oppose against it: yet gaue hee reasons, that hee meant in no sort, to detaine them from their home occasions. These poynts were mooued in the Senate of *Fortona* by *Trachinus* the Cittie Orator, whom *Philano* for that purpose had sent for, and had receiued his instructions to this end, to certifie the people, that though *Anzitemus* desert compelled the greatest regard; yet would not the *Duke* without their consent, so slightly part with so great a Summe out of the kingdome, as for the Leauge, wherby freendship and Traficke might encrease, he referred that to themselues: much time was not spent herein: For the Cittisenns enterpreting the motion to to proceed from the *Dukes* wisdome and loue were doubly drawne to consent, as well to remaine gratious to *Rugio*, as to seeme men of respect and abillytie

abillytie to *Anzitemus*: beſides they offered a beneuolence toward the charges of this great entertainment (with ſuch extremytie are they caryed, that neuer ſo little croſſed in matters of wealth and ſuperſtition, they are hardly drawne without murmutinges to trifeles: againe quietly ſoothed with a meane allowance of libertie, they profuſely offer their Mony, and applaud that, which otherwiſe they haue dared to contradict.)

Thus was *Anzitemus* ſupplied, and which prooued aduantagious vnto him, hee bargayned with certaine Merchants by great for his conduct, neuer troubling the *Dukes* Nauie, nor his Prerogatiue to muſter vp new forces; whereupon with all conueniencie they prouided him fourty well appointed Shippes, and became creditors themſelues for foure Months pay and victuals: In the meane while, the magnificent Company departed, and King *Zalby* to augment his Nephewes honour, gaue *Philano* in preſent poſſeſsion the Prouince of the nether *Comagena*; which hee in great courteſie acknowledged: yet modeſtly reſpyted the ceremonies of his enſtawlement, till his returne. For hee would queſtionleſſe accompany *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus* into *Armenia*; wherein hee wrought a double contentment. Firſt, the Souldiers and Cittizens were otherliberally pleaſed, as imputing loue and care toward them, the motiue of this iourney: next, *Anzitemus* apprehended it to his comfort; not doubting but

Philanos preſence would keepe obedience in forme: beſides the Treaſure returned by ſo conuenient a Meſſenger would diſburthen him of care and chardge to make a particular vioage. Now are all thinges ready for the departure, and the *Duke* accompanied them to their Shipps committing their iorny to auſpicious influence, ſo the farwell ſuffering a ceremonious diuiſion, gaue the one occation to returne, and the other to ſteppe into the tract of worldly felicitie: but as *Anzitemus* ſtudied to contriue his buſineſſe, he ſtopped at this doubt, whether he ſhould make directly for *Armenia*, or take *Media* in his way, where he was ſure of *Artabanus* ayde, and the *Perſians* loues: then againe remembring the Meſſage of *Euphamia*, he ſuppoſed the ſeedes of diſſention were buried paſt growing, and ſo he might be warranted of their true fayth: yet for all this to giue way vnto their opinions of his wiſdome & gouernment, he called a conference, to which were eſpecially deſiered *Trezeboro*, *Philano*, *Curanus*, *Bertoſus*; as for *Ardemio*, *Mitranes* and *Obecam*, they thought themſelues Honored in the matter, beſides *Placandus* (whom he determined to faſhion to the world, and bring his aged head with Honor to the graue) gloryed in the fauour *Anzitemus* began wih. All theſe reſolued him, that the fame of *Artabazes* death, and *Aſtiages* ouerthrow, was altredy diuulged in *Armenia*, and that the diſſentions betwixt *Media* and *Perſia* receiued a period: only

ly

ly the Maryage of *Roxana* was deferred, as not knowing how he was affected, and therfore without doubt he might determine for his owne kingdome.

Wherupon they made forward apace, and according to their expectation without difficulty (more then the wonder of his returne, because they supposed him lost in the fight with *Cleonidas*) Landed in *Armenia* at the Riuer *Erix*, from whence by easie Iornies ouer the Mountaines, they came to *Armamiranda*, where *Euphamia* was resident; to whom the people vpon report of *Anzitemus* ariuall, had flocked on heapes, desiring her to stand as a guard betweene them and his displeasure, considering their obedience since, and the reuenge vpon *Gestarius*, who had opened the Dore of the last troubles. To these she onely wished the continuance of their loyalties: but to certaine persons drawne into the faction with *Olmus*, and of inueterate malice for *Cleonidas*, (who made her beleeue they would be warranted their safety) shee absolutely denied to bee compelled: For if they determined truth, and vndissimuled duety, no doubt her Sonne (though *Artabazes* losse was irkesome to them both) knew what belonged to a remedilesse matter. But little needed these suspitions; for *Anzitemus* knowing that strange courses bred as strange alterations; and that in a good beginning consisted the hope of successe, proclaymed a generall Pardon, and

eſtabliſhing of all men in their eſtates, offices, and places, that would ratifie his ſucceſsion.

Anzitemus returneth into Armenia & is inueſted King.

With this comfort was the whole Kingdome appeaſed, and for the better aſſurance of their faythfull hearts, they confirmed the prerogatiues of his Maieſtie, and conferred to him whatſoeuer belonged to a Kings perſon, eſtabliſhing thoſe Lawes, wherewith his Father and Grandfather had ſwayed the Common-wealth. The people brought in a guift of a thouſand Talents; the Officers to continue their places, liberally fined themſelues: the Nobilitie to renew their Immunities, ſent many Preſents: the Cities to ſtrengthen their Priuiledges, diſburſed great ſummes: the Gentry to aduance themſelues, ſpared for no reaſonable matter; and the Courtiers to purchaſe fauoure, exceeded in coſt and diligence: But when the incomparable *Briſaca* was publiſhed their Queene, they paſſed in extremity of applauſe, and ſacrificed to the Gods for reſtoring their peace, and eſtabliſhing the Monarchy in ſuch worth and royalty.

THus was *Anzitemus* and *Briſaca* ſolemly inueſted, and looking backe with regard vpon the worth of *Euphamia*, affoorded her the dignities of her Widdowhead, and permitted her the fruition of many Pallaces and Priuiledges: beſides, in all Aſſemblies there was a Throane erected ſomewhat higher then his owne, that the people might know, ſhee was the Kings Mother, and how high-

ly

ly hee desteemed her. Now though Fortune dad taken off the maske of Despight, and shewed him a countenance of fauour; yet neither seemed hee vaine or elated, but reposed, and indeed moderating that excesse of ioy, which sometimes many Princes after their aduancements, cannot hide. But it may be the meditation of his great affaires reduced him, because three especiall matters lifted vp their heads to be seene; and by being seene, to be remembred.

The first, was the discharge of the *Zagarians*, and dismissing *Philano*, which hee royally performed with a Princely ouerplus, confirming the League, and wishing, if the *Persians* and *Medians* did not agree, to hearken after *Roxana*: but when *Trezoboro* came to take his leaue of his Friend, it exceeded a Passion, and the louely *Philano* truly deciphered the force of Affection: So deuiding a Ring betweene them, because subiect to aduentures, they might be sure not to be vnknowne, they parted in body, but the loue of their hearts ended not in death. The Ring was artificially wrought, and enclosed with an enameled Scalloppe made of a Stone taken from the eyes of a *Panther*; but deuided, was not to be matched without the other: both parts had impression with their owne bloods from this counterchangeable Mott; *Nonalind admittit.*

The second proceeded from his care to *Artabanus*, to whom hee had engaged him selfe, especi-

ally about the redaction of both the Kingdomes to one *Monarchy*: But this was happily without further trouble determined; for not three dayes before *Philano* departed, the Embaſſadors of *Media* and *Perſia* ariued, and after the ceremonie of gratification from all eſtates was ended, they ſhewed him a Commiſsion contayning foure principall poynts. Firſt they tyed them ſelues to yeerely Tribute, as acknowledging him the life, by which their pollitiçall bodyes did mooue in peace: The ſecond expoſed a perpetuetie of Alleageance: for Loue and Dutie was but a ſlender countetpoiſe to Life and Honour, which hee had ſo often aduentured for their ſakes: The third concerned the Mariage of *Roxana* with *Darius Artabanus* Sonne: The laſt entreated for *Cleonidas*, whom deſtruction had miraculouſly ſpared, & his owne penitency much bettered: To theſe he breifly made anſwere, the Tribute he did diſclaime, as foreſeeing ſuch a Challenge might either grow to intruſion, or moue their deniall, ſo heere after debate be the deſtruction of one another. Their loue and frendſhippe he much relyed vpon: The Maryage of *Roxana* he anulled, dilating beſides the hapineſſe depending: but concerning *Cleonidas Anzitemus*, interceded, as reſolued the differences betweene them, were not ſo ſlightly to be ouerpaſſed,

The third and eſpetiall matter of importance, conſiſted of many diffuſed partes, and therefore inter-

intermixed the more trouble to vniforme it: and this was, how to reconcile *Trezoboro* to his father, considering the inconueniences proiected from the propheſie: Firſt the *Emperors* goodwill hung in ſuſpence, for he that feared before they were borne, could not but tremble now they were men; and of abillitie to defend themſelues: Then the returne of *Kaluchy* was doubtfull vpon the notice of the deceite: Thirdly the diſcuſſing of the Oracle finding part true in the Maryage of *Brizaca* muſt needes haſten dipleaſure: Next the miſlike of *Opacus*, becauſe his daughters had ſo preſumed, would ſturre vp ſome troubles: Laſt of all the ieloſie of himſelfe, as the Principll cauſe of miſcheiſe: For commonly men feare moſt the blow, that commeth laſt, and the Oracle concluded, that *Mengrelius* muſt be ſlaine by his daughters Huſband.

Bertoſus is ſent Embaſſador to the Emperor Mengrelius and diſcoureth the ſtory of Trezobore.

THeſe particulars were orderly debated: at laſt his loue to his Queene and *Trezoboro* preuayled, eyther to make a peaceable attonement, or compulſiue entrance into *Trebizonda*: for which purpoſe *Bertoſus* was ſent Embaſſadour from the *Armenian* King to the Emperour *Mengrelius*, to whom the report of *Anzitemus* recouery ſeemed ſo ſtrange, that his feare of hee knew not what, preſaged miſchiefe to follow: yet remembring the Prerogatiue of Kings; and that *Bertoſus* deſired

desired audience, hee appoynted a day of hearing; and for the better countenancing his Maiestie, summoned all the Princes and Nobilitie of his Empire; the chiefe was the Empresse *Ballutasa:* then followed *Opatus* of *Capadocia*: *Curatsax of Iberia*: *Phorcanus of pontus*, *Schidrothemis of Synopis*, *Rhemus of Paphlagonia* and *Mithridates of Taurica* all Kings, confederats. and Tributaries: amongst his naturall subiects *Carembello Duke* of *Raganda* suppoſed the favorit of the widdow *Empreſe*, *Putrasso*, *Hardubax*, *Marquidan*, *Theoricus* and *Deiphoebus*, were principall: diuers others of great worth and Nobillytie added to the state « by their presence: as for his Sister *Pisana* she « was long since inuested with the Royalties of *Rus-* « *sia*, whereby a Crosse-mariage encreased many. « Friendes resembling a Sheafe of Arrowes, which « bound togeather are not to be broken; but dis- « ioyned, are subiect to a slender furie.

When *Bertosus* perceiued the Emperour determined to set foorth the ampliation of his glory; and that this stately shew was of purpose to make apparant his greatnesse, hee not much misliked the same, though it tended to cause him to vse the more reuerence, whereupon after the ceremony ended, and that their expectation had wrought a still silence, he layed open the recordes of admiration, and red thus distinctlie before them all: Subiects (mighty *Emperor*) entring into great and impor-

important actions are to consider, whether they be commodious to the Common-wealth, Honorable to them selues, easie, or at least not difficult to be effected, and respectious for whom, or against whom they deale: but *Princes*, or *Princes* Embassadours by all constitutions, are licensed to deliuer their Message freely, and to be answered or dispatched honourably. This I am mooued to inferre, because of the strangenesse, wherewith you must be acquainted; yet such may be my fortune, that I shall rather seeme a trusty *Mercury* from Heauen, then a tedious Herrold on Earth: But how soeuer, this is the will of the Gods, and the pleasure of the *Armenian* Kinge.

Although the first inconuenience in the Oath to *Kalucki* hath produced strange alterations, and in a manner sequestred you from the happinesse incident to other *Princes*, but quite debarred these from the comfort of a naturall Successor: yet if you can be thankefull to supernaturall Power, and louing to your selfe in the receipt, I offer you a rich and inestimable Present. To be more plaine, I bring you glad tydings of a Sonne; and to these of a true *Prince*, yea such a *Prince*, that you may presume on Deuine bountie, and Worldly felicitie, considering his preseruation, and perfection. With that hee vnfolded the wrapped vp secret of *Trezoboros* and *Brizacas* infancie, his owne troubles in their bringing vp, the theft of *Cleonidas*, their Shipwracke at Sea, the aduenture of *Ar-*

"*Zitemus*, the Mariage of *Brizaca*, and the now setled greatneſſe of *Armenia*, where the heroijcke "*Trezoboro* expecteth the loue of a Father, and is "ready to performe the duty of a Sonne.

But ere *Bertoſus* had fully concluded, ſuch was the exceſſiue ioy of the Court, and the ioy exceeding all ioyes of *Arcabella*, that *Mengrelius* was quite diſappointed, and in a manner compelled to the ſame paſſion, leaſt he ſhould ſeeme a contrary, amongſt ſo many pleaſures: wherupon he rewarded *Bertoſus* according to his eſtate, and confirmed the priuiledge of his place: yet loth to detaine him longer, then was conuenient for feare the people might immagin him Ielious of the newes, he tooke order for his diſpatch, and appoynted *Mithridates Prince* of *Taurica* to accompany him to *Armenia*, & attend on *Trezoboro* to *Trebizonda*: but neither *Arcabella* nor *Ballutaſa* could ſo ſlightly diſmiſſe him, the one like a true Mother aſking diuers queſtions touching her Children, wherin ſhe was much ſatisfied, yet beginning againe and againe aſked many things worthy of ſelution: the other like a gallant *Princes* ſeemed to glory in the action, and becauſe ſucceſſe anſwered her expectation, was very proud to be author of ſo Famous a deed, nor left ſhe to enquire of the manner of the deliuerie, when *Gellida* and *Perinthum* caryed them into *Capadocia*, for which ſeruice ſhe had contriued to Crowne the eldeſt *Queene* of *Phrigia*, and to match the other to *Omphalus* King of *Lidia*: but the

the desier to see the *Princes* hastneth *Bertosus* returne, who comming to the *Empresses* tooke his leaue with gladnesse &, was glad to leaue them in such a taking: but parting with the *Emperor*, it seemed rather a farrewell of necessitie, then delight, the manner whereof at his returne he imparted to *Trezoboro* and *Anzitemus*,

In this sort receiued his iorny a limitation, and the faithfull dispatch thereof moued *Anzitemus* to remember, that vertue meriteth a recompence, and Honor florisheth with the countenance of the Prince, wherfore he determined to aduance both *Bertosus* and *Coranus*: had not *Trezoboro* entreated him not to entercept his good meaning toward them, considering they were subiects of a nother kingdome, and how much they were endeered to him: so that *Placandus* at this time Triumphed alone, and was inuested with the Royalties of the *Dukdom* of *Tauraſim*, the cellebration whereof put *Trezoboro* in minde of his iorny, and *Mithridates* vrged it the rather, because *Brizaca* cheared her selfe with the Societie of her owne Ladies, whom *Arcabella* had very considerately sent vnto her and seemed reposed in the fulnesse of Princely greatnesse and happynesse, had not the very name of a Father & Mother imposed a taske, one desire to see and know them.

Placandus made Duke by Anzitemus.

THus was she left to the fruition of her ratefied mightinesse, and the *Prince* setteth forward

Trezoboro returneth to Trebizonda and is entertained for Prince.

toward *Trebizonda*, but vnderſtanding the Court was kept in *Samarchanda*, a rich and populous Cittie, hee ſtudied how to make his entrance, leaſt *Mongrelius* might except againſt an ambitious beginning, or vaine popularitie: yet the more hee meditated, the more intricate were his owne conceites: For neuer till this apprehending the incombrances, wherewith *Princes* were intangled, hee now perceiued the difference betwixt a great and a meane eſtate: At laſt, as it were playing his Fathers Sceane, hee would needes enucleate the Prophecy; but a very bitter taſte followed, and it repreſented a Toyle, from which a man ſtriuing to eſcape, tyed himſelfe the faſter therein. For no hope remayned, but in deſcrediting the latter part, conſidering his miraculous preſeruing, and Siſters Mariage had giuen life to the firſt; yet remembring time muſt haue his courſe, and all was to be committed to higheſt direction, hee onely framed himſelfe to giue no cauſe of miſlike, nor by any demeanour to mooue his Father to renew his thoughts of the Oracle.

As theſe particulars had a kind of mutinous paſſage, hee paſſed ſtill forward, and came at laſt within ſight of the Cittie, which indeed prepared a day of ſolemnitie for his welcome, and that neither durſt the *Emperour* interdict, nor *Trezoboro* gainſay, leaſt he might ſeeme the occaſion of a prepoſterious beginning, ſo that he was enforced to moderate that ſpirit of Maieſtie, which his Heroicall diſpoſition

position euer maintained, and saluted the companies in order as they came with a still behauiour, & when the applause of the people seemed more then a Triumph, he went forward in quietnesse, vntill the *Emperor* presented himselfe, who hastned by his wife and mother, (but especially least in the retradance the people might immagin strange matters) was now to giue and receiue the reciprocall comfort proceeding from so blessed a greeting. Heere *Trezeboro* dismounted, and with obedient demeanor prostrated himselfe to *Mengrelius*, who could not but like a father, make his ioy the more appeare; & like a Prince reioice with his subiects for such a recouery: So he tooke him in his Armes with teares, and conducted him to *Arcabella* & *Ballutasa* with gladnesse, but they seemed transported to a nother world with his sight and seasure, and as when the Sunne at his going downe is taken into heauen from the sight of the earth, so was the Prince conueyed from the rest betweene them into a new glory, and sence reioycing delight, which continued in firme strength (without so much as any mans whispering the least mistrust of alteration) vntill the cause of their now goodnesse effected the troubles ensuing, by reason *Kalucki* made acquainted with this discouery, layed claime to the *Empire* and came in person to plead his right: but we must take a progresse into another Kingdome, before he be ready to come hither.

The story of Kalecki and Mullumalla

HOwsoeuer *Historiographers* haue written of many strange Customes tending to inciuilitie amongst the *Tartarians*, in regard of the many strange Nations within so spacious a Country; yet haue they all concluded, that no people are of better obseruance toward their *Emperour*, nor *Emperour* so imperious ouer his Subiectes; by reason whereof diuers Warres and Stratagems hath made them beleeue, the Crowne was held in the hand of Victorie, to be bestowed on the preuayler: But amongst others, the most famous chaunced betweene *Barka* and *Allau*, both Noble, valiant, beloued, and at one time nominated *Emperours*; yet by no meanes consenting to Deuision or Competition: Now because in such Conuulsions, there is no *medium* betweene an Emperour and Traytor, either striued as well to liue, as to reigne; so that the dissention continued with great difficultie and extremitie betweene them, at such time, as *Kallucki* dispossessed in *Trebizond*, came with his complices into this Country; and politickly considering his estate, made offer of seruice in nature of a mercinarie Souldier vnto *Barka*, who superstitiously imputed his comming, as sent from Heauen to his assistance, and therfore without curiosity quartered him by himselfe & sent a Treasurer with other officers to attend him: but it was not long ere he made Tryall of his vertue in some slender Skirmishes, which with admiration

of

of diſcipline and valiant execution he performed: Then he ſent him to ſurpriſe a place entrenched, whether *Allau* had drawne his cheifeſt ſtrength, and by the ſame both kept the paſſages and him ſelfe from danger, this ſeemed a matter of difficultie, yet with diuers pioners, and by lodging neere, they were able to make a Mine (a thinge as yet vnknowne amongſt them) out of which in the dead of the night they iſſued on the enemie, and committing a notable ſlaughter, leueled the place with the ground, and ſo returned in Triumph: Laſtly he put him in truſt with Managing the maine Battaile (for *Allau* would tryfle no longer, but appointed a day of Tryall) wherin his Fortune and vallure ioyned in Leauge. For in that encounter he ſlew the ſtrong reputed *Allau*, diſcomfited his forces, and ſetled *Barka* in a quiet poſſeſſion of greatneſſe, as himſelfe in a ſtrange commendation of goodneſſe, becauſe the people apprehending him the meanes, whereby their troubles ceaſed, and peace flowriſhed, performed interceſſion to the Gods for his proſperitie, and made proferre of themſelues to ſupport him in any enterpriſe of his owne.

The Empres Mullumalla in loue with Kalitzki.

This was ſoone perceiued by *Mullumalla* cheife *Empres* (for their couſtomes allowed many wiues and more Concubines, & yet was the Law of adulterie ſeuerely puniſhed amongſt them) who long ſince found her ſelfe ſurpriſed with his loue, and hunted after euery oportunitie to diſcouer her affection, which (hauing receiued impreſſion from the

the report of ſo many, who ſeemed to dote on his worth, & was after ſtrengthned with her one opinion & iudgment from his preſence & vertues) grew to a kind of vehemencie, and that hindred by many reaſons, and further incombrances, encreaſed to impatience, becauſe ſhe thought there was yet meanes to do her ſelfe good, & he being a ſtranger would to be glad to be the fauorit of an *Empres*: But as ſhe went forward in this path of incontinency, ſucceſſe not alwayes reſpectious to vertuons proceedinges attended without her owne ſeeking and preiudice, as ariſing from the *Emperors* iniuſtice vpon this occation.

No ſooner had the vertue of *Kalucki* ſhewed her excellencie, and the people more and more had him in eſtimation, whereby the new eſtabliſhed *Barka* was to determine ſomething for his recompence and aduancement, but a certaine ielowſie of his inſinuating into the fauor of the kingdome, and miſconſtruing his royall birth and right to *Trebizond*, which all ſortes began already to pittie, and ſo to fauor, ſlacked his loue toward him, & weakned the ſtrength of his willingneſſe to aduance him, nor leaft his conceite ſo: but a further peeuiſhneſſe whiſpered, that he ſought to rob him of his ſubiects hearts: now when ſtrange humours were entertained, ſtrange diſtemprature followed, in ſo much that he one while reſolued quite to diſmiſſe him, as hauing no further occation to imploy him, but that he thought was too inhumaine, and his

his Subiectes would neuer condiſcend, vnleſſe it were to recouer his Empire: Another-while hee ſtudied to proportion him ſome remote corner to inhabit in: but heere hee miſtruſted, it would be reputed a diſgrace, as proceeding from a weariſomneſſe of his Company, and then the opportunitie to thinke it a diſgrace, might cauſe him to reuenge it, as if it were a diſgrace indeed. Anon hee imagined to ſend him further, vnder colour of an honourable atchieuement againſt *India*; but ſuſpecting the increaſe of his Renowne in ſucceſſe, he hapned by the way on another doubt, a reuolt by the ſame Armie committed to his charge. Thus did the vncertaintie of the beſt courſe, inhibit the certaintie of any courſe, till at laſt the very feare of Alteration, encreaſed euery Conceit to preuent the feare: and when no meanes of contentment without his abſence appeared, hee depended on this, by ſome courſe or other to make him away: as for his Followers, the head beeing cut off, the reſt of the members would quickly periſh: Yet lay hee awhile in waite to intrappe him in ſome haynous mulct or other; but fayling: hee concluded by ſecret callenture, or other diueliſh impoſture to finiſh his tragedy.

Barka determineth to murder Kalucki.

This was neither hid with ſo cloſe a veyle, but *Kalucki* perceiued the *Emperours* incongruent behauiour toward him; nor debated with ſuch truſt, but *Mullumalla* foreſaw the miſchiefe, which ſhee not much repined againſt, becauſe ſhee

had ſo good a ground to worke vpon, and ſo might raiſe her ambition, faitsfie her loue, and ſuffulciate her glory: yea though the life of the *Emperor* payed for it, and although her owne ſpirit would queſtionleſſe haue ripened conceit to ſatisfie her deſires (for what cannot; nay what will not, a woman, a Prince, and in loue, effect:) yet Fortune added winges to her inuention, and now helped to rowle the ſtone, which at laſt tombled *Barka* out of the world: For as the *Emperor* vnder Coulor of fauour would needes carry *Kalucki* to the Pallace of Concubines, but of purpoſe to make their beuties a baite to allure him, & ſo by enfringing the ſeuere edict in that kinde, to haue cauſe of accuſation againſt him: the *Empreſſe* tooke occation of paſſage by the walke, through which *Kalucki* muſt returne to the Court, and perceiuing he had been left alone amogſt them to make tryall of his abillytie in reſiſting the temptation, ſhe ſomwhat cunningly asked thoſe about her, who it was, that preſumed ſo to come within the Limitts of theſe places ſacred, and prohibyted; and from whence he had now brought him ſelfe? Anſwer was made, it was the Prince *Kalucki* whom the *Emperor* licenſed to view the other Pallace: that will I know ſayth ſhe from himſelfe, call him therefore heither, leaſt his ignorance by being a ſtranger breed further errour: But when *Kalucki* perceiued, it was the *Empreſſe*, his inward motions were at variance, and the very bloud of his

vaines

vaines ſeemed troubled, like as Wine riſeth into bubles, when a lumpe of Sugar is throne into the Glaſſe, or is ſturred with a greater ſtrength: yet come he muſt, and fall downe he muſt, and riſe againe he muſt, & anſwer many queſtions he muſt, as how the *Emperor* pleaſed to grace him? how he liked the Ladyes, and their attiyre? whether he knew the fault of his being there? and many other to the ſame purpoſe: all which he anſwered like himſelfe a man, a Prince, and vnmoued with nouelties. At laſt ſeeing the prerogatiue and cuſtome had taught her attendants to ſtand ſo remote, that they were out of hearing, ſhe left thinges impertinent to giue him notice, there was ſome good toward him, and preparing his attention, vſed theſe ſpeeches.

Before I enter (thou honorable *Stranger*) into the channell of my Diſcourſe, let mee giue thee notice of the Countries wherein wee liue, and the Cuſtomes wee obſerue. The firſt mighty, large, rude, vncitied, and in many places deformed: yet ſomewhat capable of Diſcipline, and aſſured Friendes to Vallour: The latter, not greatly Religious, nor caryed away with the nicetie of Vertue, ſeldome maintayning Iuſtice: For the ſtronger Arme ſuppreſſeth a weake; and hating, or at leaſt neglecting any Stranger whatſoeuer, onely your ſelfe may boaſt of great happineſſe in the loue of the people, and opinion of the better ſort, (though I muſt confeſſe farre ſhort of your deſert) and

" preſume on exceeding ſpecialitie neuer affoorded
" any other, but withall, as you ſee a Fire of filthy
" weedes to giue a glorious light, but to leaue a
" long time after a moſt odious ſtincke: So hath this
" applauſe caried a pleaſant ſhew toward you; But
" no leſſe then your life muſt anſwer the diſplea-
" ſure arysing from the ſame: For the *Emperour* in-
" toxicated with a violent ſuſpition againſt you,
" trembleth at the feare, and hath concluded alrea-
" die your death; What reſteth now, but preuenti-
" on? That cannot be wrought but by my meanes:
" nor can I proceed, but by your conſent, and re-
" ſpect of ſuch a Friend, as muſt and will ſaue your
" life. Be not therefore curious of my miſſ:ke to
" *Barka*, breach of Vowes, affection to your ſelfe,
" and ſuch petty queſtions. But ſuppoſe after ap-
" prooued goodneſſe, I ſhame to ſee thee ſubiect to
" apparant inhumanitie; now reſteth in thy choyce
" either life or death. To this, a hundred ſeuerall
Mullumalla contriueth to ſaue Kaucki. paſſages are open: To that, onely one Dore is vnlocked, and looketh both to life and Maieſtie. To be plaine; either the *Emperour* muſt yeeld to the ſummons of a haſty Death, or thy ſelfe to the arreſt of a violent Execution. If then with vnderſtanding this abruptneſſe, thou canſt remember thy ſelfe; and by thy ſelfe, the danger to be acquainted with the affaires of *Princes*; and by that danger, to contriue the contrary ſaftie; and by that ſaftie, to reioyce with her, that determineth all honour vnto thee, I am ſatisfied: and hope in

con-

conceiuing mee a right, neither is your Courage, nor Wisedome so rebated, but you can put a difference betwixt a happy life, and miserable death.

This s daine breuitie, but full of substaunce, and so well graced with a maiesticall Spirit, brought with it her accustomed companion Amazement: yet becausse there was nothing heere inferred (except the loue of the *Empresse*) which hee before suspected not, his Answere seemed the redier; and with addition of extraordinarie demeanour, strengthened her liking the rather toward him. For when he saw that counterpleading would rather shew a Demissnes, then Conscience; and that all good courses were vnprofitable with vntractable people, hee graciously submitted to her behests, not without protestation, that her Beautie and magnificense, had attracted his regard more, then desire of any Greatnesse: So that hee rested like Wax moulded with her warme hand, ready for what impression it pleased her to bestow: onely hee impetrated, that if it were possible, hee might be exempted in the bloody attempt; because hee would not pollute his hands with a *Princes* massacre. This shee tooke as an excellent part of Generositie: So that as much inflamed with his Vertues, as Person, shee dismissed him to his owne care, and setled her selfe to the strange course of the *Emperours* death; which ledde her vp by easier staires, then she could imagine.

For the *Emperor* fully resolued to his murder compacted with *Chamus*, *Ilion*, *Iodda* and *Tarachim* to be the executioners: but *Tarachim* either a secret instrument of the *Empresse*, or taking remorce to see iniustice rebell against vertue or pollytickly forecasting for his owne priuate, as perceiuing to what end her desires tended: once againe discouered the substance and circumstance of the cause to *Mustumalla*, and that he wanted nothing but a time to put it in practise. And hath he no body (saith she) to make the slaue of wickedneſſe, but a man endeered to vs for his Nobillytie of blood, and euer till now the seruant of Honour and vertue? Beleeue me I thinke you are bewitched so strangly to be drawne into your owne ruines, for what trust can he repose in you, that can be hired with Mony to doe mischeife: without question it is but a plot of tryall against your selues, who will euer make account of the Murderers of a Prince; yea such a Prince, to whom the kingdome must yeeld the Tribute of your peace: but if there were possibillytie to beleeue, that any many durst immagin such a thought: by the silence of the night I sweare, were he not my *Emperor*, I iudge him worthy of death in his base submission to such villany, therefore Honorable *Tarachim* deceiue not thy selfe in *Barkas* meaning, nor be againe deceiued, though he meane as thou sayest, For then can it proue no otherwise then absolute tirany, and to free the Common wealth of a Tyrant is indeed

an

an action of renowne: This she spake to put his disposition to the touch, and finding him willing to be diuerted, she then strengthned him in that resolution: this made him more flexible toward her, and that perswaded a wondefull contrarietieb, ringing in the Ielosie of his owne life, so to feare to preuent it submitted to her directions: againe, she with a doubtfull manner of speech, that if he had sayd the truth it were better a wicked *Emperor* miscaried, then men of vertue and good deseruing: and last of all with reasons, promises, and protestations to make the fact iustifiable, tooke his oth to kill the *Emperor*: Which he very opportunely performed in a walke adioyning to the Pallace, as conferring togeather in secret about *Kalucki*, and no sooner shruncke the bleeding Carkase to the ground, but he wounded himselfe in many places with the *Emperors Semiter*, quight conueying away the instrument of death, and so stood crying for helpe in a pittifull manner. *The murder of Barka.*

By this time hath the strange reporte of the *Emperors* murder possessed both Court, and Country with amase, and the murtherer without any pursuite quickly submitted him selfe: but brought before the *Empresse* & the rest to whom such a cause papertained, he confessed the fact: yet desiered that he might take away the shame, though not the fault in the misfortune, by discouering the secrete as it chanced, now because his bleeding woundes induced commiseration, and that his present state made

shew

" ſhew of violence againſt him, it was thought con-
" uenient to heare him, and if it were, but to bolt out
" the reſt of the conſpirators. Moſt deuine *Empreſſe*
" (quoth he) & Honorable vpholders of this mightie
" ſtate, I intend neither to entreat for fauour nor life,
" (for in the very misfortune of the miſcheife, I am
" worthy to dye) yet giue me leaue to extenuate
" your diſpleaſures againſt me, and to diſclaime ei-
" ther a naturall diſpoſition to ſuch impietie, or now
" willingneſſe to lay violent handes on ſuch a per-
" ſon: wherein that my true ſimplicitie may ſome-
" what countenance me, and that I plead for my
" Honour and renowne, giue me leaue to Launce
" my Barcke into this Channell. Who doth not re-
" member the miſery of our Country through the
" ambition of our Emperours *Barka* and *Allan*,
" deceaſſed? Who doth not acknowledge the bleſ-
" ſings conferred vnto vs by the Prince *Kaluoki*,
" who with all vertuous induſtries hath proceeded
" for our good? yet (mighty *Peeres*) I ſhame to
" tell it, without reſpect of worth, royaltie, honour,
" or the benefite it ſelfe, ſome wretched Ielouſie ſo
" miſled our *Emperour*, that very ingratefully (if
" I make not too great offence in the tearme) hee
" contriued many wayes his deſtruction, miſcon-
" ſtruing our Loues, and his Vallour, to tend to an
" aſpiring reach: and when nothing appeared to ap-
" peaſe his miſdoubts, hee flatly concluded to mur-
" der him ſecretly: To which beſtiality, hee ſug-
" geſted *Chamus*, *Iliod*, *Iodda*, and my ſelfe, ouer-

reaching

reaching our Obedience with Imperious will, and
inforcering our fraylty with Reward and Prefer-
ment. Now what euer good or bad Angell was
ouer this dismall night predominant, I know not;
but sending for mee into the Walke, hee conferred
about the Murder; and because my slackneſſe see-
med rather enclined to remorce, then dispatch of
the tyranous decree, all impatient hee flew vpon
mee, wounding mee in this manner, neuer repres-
sing his furie, till I lost the vse of respect and con-
sideration: then life straue with necessitie, and
compelled her seruant strength to the cloze, hoping
onely to saue it selfe; wherein, howsoeuer it chan-
ced, the Swo d in the fall, strooke him to the heart:
which how grieuous it is vnto mee, the immortall
powers, that haue deliuered *Kalucki*, and preser-
ued all your glories, can witnesse.

This vnlookt-for contrarietie, made them all
amazed, yet when the examination of the rest, and
other circumstances agreed with the truth, most
strange was the confusion amongst them: For the
people with great acclamations cryed out, Liue
Kalucki, liue *Tarachim*. The *Empresse* tooke hea-
uily her Husbands misfortune; but seemed more
troubled with his infamy. The *Princes* of the
State knew not what to say, or how so proceede.
The people they continued with zeale towarde
Kalucki, and in a manner protested. *Mullumella*
could not doe better, then make him satisfaction
by mariage. Heere Wisedome played a kind parte

For though her Desire burned within her to the same purpose, yet a still modesty kept her from making shew of any such motion: and when the greatest Lords (as not knowing how to suppresse it, being a matter of that consequence, & the party a man of that high deserving) vrged it againe. Shee sayd it was a time of sorrow, and the loue toward them, would not consent to any thing vnbefitting: But when indeed another and another time was spent in yeelding reasons of the likelihood of happinesse; and that her cunning had drawen them to beleeue their importunities should preuaile with her, shee welcommed the fortune, that had thus smiled vpon her, and tooke *Kalucki* into the tuition of her loue; which quickly inuested him *Emperour*, and sware the Subiects to loyalty and obedience.

Kalucki Emperour of Tartary.

Now was hee to play the part of an Emperour, and by reason of the naturall rudenesse of the Country, and inciuility of the people; the one to be refined, the other reduced, the greater was his need of those excellent ornaments of Kings: but being him selfe a naturalist of Maiesty, hee soone put in practise Magnanimitie for his State and Court; Wisedome for the common causes, and (extracted from her) Pollicy to keepe the great men in obedience, Affability (as farre as their Customes permitted) to obtaine fauour, where it hung in suspence; and Iustice to strengthen the loue got by meere good hap. Besides, hee knew how

how *Mullumalla* had proceeded; and therefore was ſhee to be regarded with extraordinary behauiour: But heere was no place for Miſtruſt or Ielouſie, becauſe ſhee prooued an admirable Wife and Mother of many Children; and the people continued in their loue, as hauing no cauſe to miſlike.

Kalucki enformed, how his brother had broken promiſe and couenant with him, determineth to be reuenged.

BVt as he went forward in this towardly lorne to felicitie, fame that euer ſcorned to be penn'd in a Corner came to tell him, the Emperour *Mengrelius* had infringed the couenants ratefied, and a Prince liued in ſcorne of his compoſition, which ſomewhat diſtempred him, as forſeeing the troubles impending, or ſhame to let his Honour be abuſed: but when *Scaroxus* the brother of *Queridock*, whom *Mengrelius* had diſpoſſeſſed of the Royalties of *Sinopis* by placing *Scydrothemis* King, had in perſon vrged other particulars: then was *Mullumalla* made acquainted with the ſtory from the beginning, and ſhe (though deſier could haue pleaded, that no ſatisfaction was anſwerable to his company) yet ſtomached the indignity, and in her Heroiick ſpirit concluded, his renowne hung in ſuſpence without reuenge: Now reſted the doubt, what courſe to take: And therein many times and much debating ſhewd as well the dutie of a wife, as Honour of a Prince: at laſt ſhe willed him by ſommoning

Calucki certefied his brother had a ſonne.

the Eſtates of the *Empire* to make tryall of their affection; (which hee performed, becauſe it pleaſed; and it pleaſed, becauſe ſhee wiſhed: and ſhee wiſhed, becauſe he was ſo great a perſon: and greatly beloued) to whom after the Ceremonies of the aſſembly were ended, he deliuered theſe ſpeaches.

Although (louing and worthy to be beloued *Lords* and *Subiects*) the deuine prouidence and your fauours hath collated this *Empire* without deſert or my owne firſt ſeeking: yet muſt I not now either degenerate from that I am, or appeare other, then I ſhould be, leaſt you may immagin former baſeneſſe, or preſent demiſneſſe: but becauſe matters of Armes and martiall exploites are intended (and as may be obiected rather for my priuate ſatisfaction, then your generall good) I determined to acquaint you with the ſtory from the beginning, and ſo fell into the addition of many circumſtances, with this laſt newes of *Scaroxus*, which they neuer heard of: Now, if you thinke it meete, that ſo great a commander ouer ſo many valiant people, and ſuch ſpatious Countries ſhould digeſt a defamation, which pettie *Princes* would aduenture to reuenge, I muſt ſubmit, and for your ſakes, or peace will make the Warre of a diſtempred conſcience: But if my calamitous diſcourſe hath wrought any impreſsion, whereby with your loues and aſſiſtance I may proceed, then doe I expoſtulate your conſtancie, and account my ſelfe more happy, then Fortunate: For if you haue

rightly

rightly vnderstood me, my meaning is not to lead you to destruction, or driue you like a Tyrant to a slaughter house: but I expose vnto you the recouery, Citties, Possessions, Ritches, and what men can desier, of a large and fertile Countrie to which without doubt the Gods will consent, so your abashed drawing backe be not signes of ill successe.

When it seemed he determined silence, the company rather wondring at his perfections, then misunderstanding his speeches, gaue a great Plaudite, crying, the Gods preserue *Kalucki*; the Gods protect our Emperor; and with vnfainednesse offered themselues and goods freely to the enterprise: this made him feast them all sumptuously by way of gratification, and that brought them to care and reuerence toward him the easier: so a Councell of Warre disputed the matter, and dispersed the seuerall Commanders to rayse vp Forces to make his Armie the greater: For though hee had euer in readinesse a hundred thousand in Armes, besides his owne Companies brought with him from *Trebizond*, and now foure-score Thousand seruing for a Guard to his person; yet were his Foure principall Kingdomes; that is to say, *Ieckomongall*, *Sumongall*, *Merchat*, and *Metrit*, assessed at Fourtie thousand a peece, mustred and orderly trayned (in respect of their former disorder) at *Coralla*, where the *Rendezuous* was appoynted.

Malacki returneth to challenge the Empire of Trezibonda.

THus with a mightie Armie he marched along, leauing *Multumalla Regent* in his absence, who the morning of his departure had sacrifised two whight Hartes to *Diana*, and by their forward going to the Alter, presaged good succesſe, and his returne: and hauing framed an Imperiall Diadem set on many degrees, and beautified with inestimable Pretious stones, which were supported in euery barre with her owne protrature (a thing questionlesse both for worth and workmanshippe of admiration) she Crowned him therwith in the sight of the Armie, and so with a Warlike ceremony committed him to the tuition of the Sunne: Thus is he come to the confines of *Albania*, and there rested himselfe, studying which way to proceed in the best course, and at last creating *Queridock* Prince of his Emperiall tent, made him an Embassador to *Mengrelius* with these instructions: That whereas he had been dispossessed of the Empire of *Trebizonda* by wrong and despight, and was contented to embace him selfe to strange conditions to auoyde effusion of blood: they had yet, to adde to his indignytie scorned him, and infringed the Lawes both of Honor and nations: that seeing this contempt was intollerable, & the Couenants enioyned him to lay claime to his right, he came in person with an Armie of three hundred Thousand well appyoynted Soldiers to performe the same, that if it seemed good

to

to the Emperials to admitte him to quiet poſſeſſion, conſidering it was but a ſmale ſatisfaction of his firſt wronges, no worthy man ſhould be diſplaced, and he would deſiſt from the way of conqueſt: That if they impugned his deſires, then to denounce open hoſtilly, and giue them warning, the buſineſſe was remedileſſe, and he mercileſſe.

This Embaſie did *Queridocke* deliuer with a gallant ſpirit and grace, not without intimation of iniuſtice concerning him ſelfe, and diuers others baniſhed their naturall Country: which in a manner diſtracted the hearers, by reaſon they could not denie what he ſayd, nor durſt accord to what hee importuned, and had not their preſent peace, but eſpetially the vndoubted towardlineſſe of the Heroijck *Trezobero* ſuggeſted infinite miſeries, and wretchedneſſe in the beſt change, without doubt there would haue followed a moſt terrible confuſion.

But now is *Mengrelius* perplexed many wayes with the arrogant Meſſage, the opinion of his Subiects, the remembrance of his firſt wroog, the trouble of the Warres, the errours of his Mother and Wife, the alteration of the State, the diſpleaſure againſt *Opacus* for his Daughters ſauing his Children, the duty of a Father now they were preſerued, and the feare of the Prophecy, which indeed dogged him at the heeles, and followed him like a ſhadow: So that no way of ſafety appeared, but

in

in his Sonnes destruction; which as hee supposed, would both satisfie *Kalukies* claime, and settle his owne ielosie, yet loth to discouer his feares in publike, or enterpose such a mischeife in the times of rumors and occations of Warre: he went more cunningly to worke, and vnder Colour of the common good thus spake to the estates of the *Empire*, which he had assembled at *Samarchanda*.

So great is the mischeife threatned against vs (most happy people, but in my vnhappines) that "I scarce know, how to preuent it; because on the "one side my fatherly affection and your loues, "must and will disclaime any strange courses against "my sonne, on the other side, my dignitie impor-"tuneth a Princely connexion of soueraingtie, and "nature it selfe Countermandeth the Tiranous com-"position, which I am sure began in Iniustice, and "you may obiect will end in destruction: but be-"cause my Country & people are in a degree before "my Children: yea my owne life and least the com-"monwealth should complaine for vexing her with "these intollerable wronges; if there may be reason "in this vnreasonablenesse: I abiure the name "of a Father, and offer my sonne as a Sacri-"fice of attonement: I renounce the Royaltie, "which now seemeth like a glorious Sunne; and "submitte for your satisfaction: I cast downe my life "to be put into the other Ballance against your af-"fliction: For neither *Mengrelius*, nor *Trebozo* "shall be themselues to make you worse, then your-

selues,

ſelues, yet be not too ſodden in cenſuring me care- »
leſſe of him, whom you ſee the heauens haue cared »
for; nor too ſubmiſſe concerning my owne Honor »
which I haue ſo charylie preſerued; For if you will »
vouchſafe to ioyne with me, all helpes of pollecy »
and courage ſhall be vnited, that the body and »
communitie of this Empire remaine vndiſſolued, »
and before I ſubmit to any diuiſion of Titles, which »
now your reſpects haue conferred, the world ſhall »
tremble at the report of theſe ſtratagemmes, and »
death giue a plaudite to my laſt Tragicall act, but »
once againe like a louing mother, which is ſtill »
taking her leaue of her departing ſonne, and haue- »
ing one ſpetiall matter to counſell him in, doth »
often and very often remember it: ſo like the »
Father of the Common-wealth, doe I put you »
in minde, while it is time, to thinke vpon the hor- »
rible end of this tryall: For to affright vs the »
more, we are to contend with Beaſtes, and men »
worſe then Beaſtes, *Anthropophagi*, *Miſocoli*, »
Monſters in nature, and all Barbariſme, ſo that no- »
thing but bloud and death, or vtter ruin of vs »
all (which the Gods interdicte) muſt follow in »
the preuailing: Preuent therefore, Preuent in »
time your troubles heere; is *Mengrelius* began the »
inconuenience, heere is *Trezobro* the cauſe of your »
feare, heere is both father and ſonne the Ranſome »
of your diſquiet.

But as a further vehemencie might haue vnſha-
dowed the heate of other humors, the people vn-

willing to ſee their Prince ſo diſtempred, and vnable to diſſolue their firme rooted zeale, cryed aloud, the Gods confound the diſturbers of our peace, the Gods diſpoſe of all thinges to their pleaſure: liue therefore *Mengrelius* ſacred, and irremoueable: ſpare not to defend your kingdomes, for we will neither haſſard our Princely *Trezoboro*, nor permit any diſsipation of our gouernment.

Mengrilius is reſolued to put it to the Tryall of a battaile but is preuented by miracle.

THus is *Kaluckies* Embaſſage contradicted, and *Queridock* diſmiſſed backe, which cauſed defiance to rumour terrible thinges, and the beſt diſpoſitions were ſhuffled betwixt feare & hope: At laſt *Kalucki* vnwilling to triſell, leaſt prouiſion for ſo great an Armie might be wanting, ſent forward the greateſt part of his Forces deuided into three Battailes vnder the conduct of *Sicambus*, *Mallan*, *Petroſlol*, *Zami*, and *Xantippus*, all in times paſt of hereditary poſſeſsions in *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Colchidos*: and followed himſelfe with the reſt quartered in fiue partes, vnder the commaund of *Miſogambus*, and *Olippo*, two of the *Empreſſe Mullumallas* bretheren, and *Barſangol* and *Iubar*, ſonnes of *Mithra* and *Delium*, two Queenes of late the Concubines of *Barka*: In the mideſt was *Kalucki* himſelfe ſequeſtred in an *Emperiall* Tent, & according to the ceremonious reſpect of his eſtate, neither to bee ſeene nor ſpoken withall, but at ſpetiall

tiall times: The ordring of this buſineſſe was not committed to ſuch a ſecretary, but the Emperour of *Trebizond* knew the manner of his proceedings: and by that time he had paſſed *Cularopa* furniſhed himſelfe reaſonable well: For from *Taurica*, the heither *Scithia*: *Ruſſia*, and *Hiperborei*, he had one hundred Thouſand *Auxiliaries*: out of *Coichidos*, *Pontus*, *Iberia*, and *Paphlagonia* he muſtered eightie Thouſand: and from the Cities of *Samarchanda*, *Trebizond*, *Merlanes*, and *Xantippi* he receiued twentie Thouſand well appointed, and of better ſpetiallitie, by reaſon they were the ſonnes of Noble men, and Cittizens glorying in their ancient freedomes: theſe he kept next his perſon, and appoynted *Curatſax*, *Pharcanos*, *Scydrothemis*, & *Mithridates* ouerſeers of his Guard, as for *Trezoboro* he ſuffered his forwardneſſe to direct the whole buſineſſe as if his hope receiued life, that ſome action or other might worke his miſcarying.

Thus is the Trumpet of defiance ready to ſound on both ſides, yet meane nor the *Trebizondians* in ſuch ſuddenneſſe to put it to the Tryall of a field, becauſe by being poſſeſſed of the ſtreites and paſſages: the enemie was ſure to leſſen his numbers, and they winn time the Father of many contrarieties: but the Circumſtances of this great Warre are referred to my booke of Battailes, I therefore ouerpaſſe them now, and only certefie you, that when *Mengrelius* perceiued he was not able

to detaine them longer from a day of terror, he tooke a Truce for ſeauen dayes, laying open the Trenches, and making the way plaine, as if he determined to entertaine ſlaughter with handſomneſſe, or let death haue a larger freedome by eaſie paſſage: So that the ſtouteſt Courage was appauled at the preperation, and had no other hope but diſmay and confuſion: yet feares are enemies to the Progres of victory, and therefore all abatements of Courage were abſented, when it came to the tryall indeed, and *Kalucki* contrary to the couſtomes of his greatneſſe, thought good to ouerlooke the partes of his Wartelike body, that if neede required, the helping a diſeaſe or fault in time, might preuent a greater miſcheife: nor deſiſted hee ſo, but Mounted on a throne of purpoſe to bee ſeene and herd, he thus tooke his farrewell.

"I intend not to vſe many wordes vnto you, "as ſuſpitious of your loues and vallures: For if "there were ſuch a ſlackeneſſe, it is now too late "to murmure or Trifell; but becauſe my regard to- "ward you may bee the better expreſſed, I am "the bolder to ſpeake, yet doe but determine to "put you in minde of your owne mindes, and know- "ledge: Remember then, what humour ſoeuer the "enemie entertaine, we are ſuccorleſſe, and farre "from home, therefore muſt vallure make your way "into new poſſeſsions, or if you ſuppoſe the oſten- "tation of the enemie, is a glorious ſpectacle, you haue

haue Armes and Hands to vnplume them, and " bedeck your ſelues with their ſpoyles: but what is " this to your owne liues and glories, which in " a manner enforce you to ſhake off all incom- " brances of feare as for my ſelfe? (though I am " loth to degeneratte from the ancient prerogatiues " of your Emperors) yet will I be the firſt to giue " the onſet: For the cauſe being mine, mine ſhall " be the Honour or the ſhame; and yours the " ſpoyles, wherein beſides the renowne of the ex- " ployte, the pooreſt vaſſaile ſhall thinke himſelfe " well rewarded. The Country you ſee is plea- " ſing, and the bleſsinges you haue already taſted " of; goe one therefore goe on: Fortune bidds " you goe on; and Victory lookes already with " a pleaſing Countenance. Heere a wonderfull cla- " mour ſeemed to threaten heauen with the noiſe, " by which the *Trebyzondians* had warning of their enemies ill meaning toward them: For till this they had beene awrentiue vnto *Mengrelius*, who very well knew, that a ſeaſonable encouragement with addition of the worth of the partie ſpeaking, was a veary whet-ſtone of Courage, and had wrought great effect indeed with whole Armies almoſt ready to faint.

Little need I (ſayed he) debate any particulars concerning the former occaſions of your now imminent troubles: For your owne Loyalties and reſolutions haue put away all feare, and continued the ſteadſaſtneſſe, which I now finde, yea hurried

" you to the Gates of danger to make demonſtration
" of your conſtancie: I am therefore ſure you will
" not now relent, what euer miſcheife is threatned,
" nor would I haue you diſcouraged, in that neither
" ſpoyles of Cities, nor ritches of a plentifull Land
" ſhall be the recompence of your charge and endea-
" uors, but rather animated in regard you are to
" ſupport a floriſhing Common-wealth, and a Coun-
" try (thankes to the eternall Powers, beautified with
" a bleſſed plentie: If this ſeeme a ſlender enforce-
" ment, then looke on your Byrths and the places
" challenging naturall regard, your Mothers, that
" bare you, your Wiues endeered vnto you, your
" Children, that exclaime: your friends and Allies
" depending vpon you, and your ſelues, knowing
" the neceſsitie of life: as for the Enemie, I aſſure
" you, they haue not that aduantage by the number
" of men, as your ſelues by diſcipline, vallure, and
" good order: But why ſhould I ſo much as wiſper
" miſdoubts amongſt you, when neuer appeared
" more loue and dutie; and what will not loue and
" dutie effect? And the immortall Powers are ap-
" peaſed, giuing notice of in-ſcrutible ſecrets, as you
" can all witneſſe the *Haruſpices* haue promulged,
" let not vs then conſent to ſurqueory or demiſ-
" neſſe.

As he was going on, the ſigne was giuen to the Battaile: But behold, a ſtrange interception deuided the Armies by the deſcending of a thicke and ſpatious Cloude, which ſtood as a Wale betweene them,

them: at last a sence dismaying thunder made a horrible rupture, and a strange voyce with a passable lightning cried out *Trezoboro bariona: Trezoboro bariona*; Whereupon the *Magy*, *Gymnosophists*, and *Haruspces* were called on both sides, who interpreted it to this sence; that there was no striuing against deuine reuolutions. For the Gods had proclaimed *Trezoboro* the sonne of peace; and when *Mengrelius* vrged it was by the way of sacrifice, they repugned, as finding no blood must be shed: by this, the former terror vanished, and the Armies seemed *Metamorphised* into sober expectation, which caused the Magnificent Prince to mount himselfe like the sonne of Honour, and stepping before the maine Fronts with a seemely Trotte he paced to the *Tartarians*, desiring to present himselfe before the Emperour *Kalucki* and king of Kings, who enformed of the gallant demeanor, and presence of his *Nephew*, called the principall commaunders of his Armie, and setled in his *Emperiall* Tent with exceeding Maiestie and Pompe, admitted him audience: but when *Trezoboro* tooke notice of the state, and the Emperours person, he quickly alighted and with a respectious ceremony of obeisance, entreated his fauor to giue him leaue to speake: which belike was obtained with order; For he thus began.

The battaile preuented by Miracle.

I haue not presumed (most reuerent, sacred, and vnuanquishable *Emperiour*) in any impudent manner to neglect my dutie by this Course, or desperat contempt

" contempt to weigh with ſlightneſſe your high
" Maieſtie, or great Armie, but by deuine inſpiration
" whereof there is none, that hath not in ſome ſort
" participated: I preſent vnto you the ſtrange truth
" of my birth, life, and bringing vp, whereby ſhall
" appeare a very deſtinie to this titular happineſſe,
" or (as it may proue) incombrance; and that the
" wronges, which haue thus ſturred you to reuenge,
" were neither determined in mallice, nor meane
" now to be continued in contempt, becauſe the
" Triumphs of murder and deſtruction will then be
" lamentable: which to preuent, the Gods in their
" accouſtomed mercy haue giuen a Prodigious war-
" ning: Let vs not therefore with the Giants fight
" againſt heauen, nor reiect the bleſſed fauor, which
" now ſhineth vpon vs, as if it were to de clare the
" will of all working power, diſclaimeth effuſion
" of blood: and for my ſelfe, which am the reputed
" cauſe, you ſee I come as a ſimple Hollocauſt to re-
" deeme the liues of infinite Thouſandes: yet giue
" mee leaue (how euer it pleaſed you to ſubmitte
" at that time to vnkinde baniſhment) to exprobrate
" the vnnaturall couenants ratefied, which as it
" ſhould ſeeme the whole ſenate of heauen contra-
" dicted. With that, he diſcouered at large the *Ora-*
" *cle* at *Delphos*, the manner of his Byrth, the pietie
" of *Opacus* daughters, the theft of *Cleonidas*, the
" Shipwrack of *Bertoſius*, and the mariage of *Briza-*
" *ca*. Now ſaid he, if you thinke it conuenient to
" impeach this ſecret, heere I proſtrate my ſelfe to
the

the ſauageſt crueltie, but if an honorable attonement might paceſie your iuſt conceiued diſpleaſure, and reward this Armie, wee offer a yeerely Tribute to thy byrth-right, a ſatisfaction for all charges, and a Million of Treaſure as a donatiue to the Soldiers: beſides, the world ſhall tremble at the vnitie of your houſes, and ages to come, reuerence the Fame of two ſuch bretheren; For you being the ſeruant of the great God, and ruler ouer all rulers, *Mengrelius* will be your ſeruant, and ſubmitte as farre, as ſuch a *Monarch* may doe to his elder Brother, and higheſt Lord.

Theſe ſpeaches iudicially deliuered (his outward countenance tempered betweene an amiable and modeſt behauiour) breathed a contentment, as if a ſoft Winde ſturring the ſweete Flowers, ſhould thereby infuſe delight to our Senſes: whereupon ſucceeded the effectes, a ſtill Deſire to be fedd with the Pleaſure: and Pitty challenging Miſchance, which ſhould hinder them from that walke. So *Trezoboro* was for a time graciouſly diſmiſſed; and a Truce of fourteene dayes gaue them entercourſe one to another: in which ſpace, the aſſembly of *Eſtates* ſate dayly to finiſh this ſtrange building of Peace: As for the Souldiers, their conceites ſtretched no farther, then to woonder at the Story, to be mooued with the miracle, to pittie *Trezoboros* youth and comlyneſſe, to wiſh an attonment on all ſides, and to returne with wealth, libertie and credit: at laſt, ſuch was the apprehenſion of their

preſent ſtate, and miracle diſpoſing their humours to contrarieties, that *Kalucki* (after *Mengrelius* conſented to readmitte thoſe *Trebizondians*, that would returne to former libertie and eſtates, or like recompence) ſent *Miſogambus* and *Olippo* with preſents of ratification; who with ſound of Trumpet in both the Armies proclaimed an inuiolate Truce: whereupon a ſtately *Coloſſeum* of braſſe was erected betweene the Armies, inſculped with the whole occurrents, as they chanced in order, to which bargaine of felicity *Ballutaſa* and *Arcabella* ſet their ſeales: the one, thanking the Gods for the aduancement of her Children: the other, ſacrificing to Fortune, that had ſo many waies encreaſed her happyneſſe. Thus doe the brothers to the great applauſe of the people, greet one another; and the ſtate of the Spectacle would make a vollume in the deſcription: but time muſt determine all thinges, and theſe great Armies be deuided: ſo *Kalucki* with treaſure, Honor, and reuerence returned to the magnanimous *Mullumalla*; to whom he made an offertory of himſelfe and ritches, and *Mengrelius* with peace, libertie, and delight, was welcomed to *Trebizond*; where proſperitie ſeemed for the time, to keepe her manſion, had not the wrathfull *Nemeſis* (who neuer leaueth wrong and iniuſtice vnpuniſhed) ſent for Ieloſie and Suſpition to attend on her in the progreſſe of viſiting *Mengrelius*, leaſt the will of the Gods ſhould prooue a mockery, and the inceuitable de-

crees

crees of Deſtinie be not accounted of: and thus ſhe meanes to contriue her entertainement.

NO ſooner was the *Trebizondian* Armie diſſolued, but *Trezoboro* ſollemly proclaimed the Prince of peace, as well to cellebrate their late quietneſſe, as to practiſe Martiall exployts, went about ſome fruites of idleneſſe with gloryous ſhoes to the people, and many Triumphes to the Court: whereby he made way to the peoples loue to come in at, and euery mans eyes were fixed vpon his youth and comlineſſe: as you ſee ſome forren Plant gracing a curious Garden, and the commers in regarding the reſt to no purpoſe: this was deſpightfully pried into by ſome hatefull polliticeans, that terrefied the *Emperor* with blaſoning his ſonns demeanor, which might winn the hearts of the kingome from him: to theſe certaine old Councellers, rather ſtomaching to ſee their impatience & peremptorineſſe abhorred, then daring to ſet a foote Broyles and diſcentions, added the greatneſſe of the charge (conſidring the Treaſure was much waſted with their laſt buſineſſe) the diſorders of idle attendants, the pride of his followers, the ſlenderneſſe of the preſent Court, all which ſet his thoughts at randome, & ſome of them ſtumbled on the wreſted interpretations of the propheſie, which *Mengrelius* (fearing moſt the blow, that came laſt) abſolutely beleeued, began to draw neerer and neerer to the full effect,

The ſtory of Mengrelius and Trezoboro: with the fathers ieloſy againſt the ſonne by reaſon of the propheſie.

and ſo began a ſtrange manner of Melancholy, ſequeſtring him ſelfe from conuerſation; and when neceſsitie compelled him abroad, hee grew impatient and irrigular: but the greateſt cauſe of his diſquiet, accrewed from the ſuggeſtion of diuers, who through the credite of *Belgorundo*, made euery paltry appearance of a litle skill to carry the true countenance of Learning and Diuination, by putting in practiſe the *Cabaliſticall* Art, *Ægyptian* Characters, *Aſtronomicall* Figures, *Hierogliphicall* repreſentations, *Auguring s*, and *Pithonicall* Incantations; which with ſome ſlender likelihood were intermixed: ſo that the Court ſwarmed with a troope of diueliſh *Aſtronomers* (a kind of people alwayes forbidden, and alwayes retained) whoſe ſtrange Attire and Demeanour, gaue occaſion of laughter and aſtoniſhment: the people counting them wiſe and extraordinary; the better ſort deriding them, as buffonns and deceiuers.

With ſuch illuſions was *Mengrelius* quite caried from him ſelfe, and on a ſodaine conſented to a decree, that none (of what eſtate ſoeuer) ſhould intermeddle with the *Emperors* retyering, nor appoynt extraordinary meetings without the verge of the Court, which was ſtrangely taken at the firſt: but *Trezoboro*, diſcouering the ſecret, was contented to repaire to the Pallace; which his preſence quickly filled with entercourſe of people, and the applauſe range by the *Empetors* eares; who in ſhort time miſliked it farre worſe then the other, as almoſt by

eye-

eye-witneſſe perceiuing, he meant to inſinuate into the vulgar opinion to irrite a faction: From hence a plaine diſpleaſure aroſe by commaunding the *Prince* to depart the Court: then wrought his abſence beliefe of euery thing reported; and added withall, that the opportunitie made him ſtudy on the diſgrace, and ſo prepare the reuenge; (For indeed there wanted not thoſe, which propoſed to *Trezoboro* his Fathers cruelty at the beginning, his wretched hate now, the errours of many men about him; and that there was no reaſon he ſhould permit the indignitie: but theſe he ſuffered as Spiders in an houſe ſeruing to gather the Poyſon and Venome of the Ayre, that the reſt may be more ſweete and holſome:) till at laſt, a wretched ſurmiſe diſplaied the enſiugnes of hate againſt him; which was too true, by reaſon all his fauourites and attendants were remooued, or neglected. *Caliſthenes* a man of an high linage, and dilicat witte, which by ſome extraordinary pleaſantnes got the name of Good conceit; and yet till now made gratious with the *Empreſſe*, was checked with the tearme of *mimus* for ſlender glauncing at the *Emperors* melancholy. Another demanding but the cauſe of the *Princes* ſequeſtration, was impriſoned. A third, making a *Satiricall* Inuection againſt eſpeciall perſons, was publickly whipt. A fourth, ſaying, the *Prince* was more worthy ſubmitted to the execution of a ſeuere Iudgement: which made a great alteration; and to be plaine, ſlacked the reue-

rence and dutie euer borne toward him.

Thus remained all places full of rumours, wherein confusion spred many dispositions abroad: some saying the *Emperor* was ill directed, or worse inclined: some that the Prince was causelesly wronged: some layed the fault on priuate persons, who hauing a long time swaied the Common-wealth, feared least the quicke conceite of others would detect their ill gouernment, and therefore ment vnder publike pretences to preuent priuate mischeifes: some blamed the *Emperors* credulytie of the coosening sort of Magy: some affirmed he was quite distracted, and some dared exclaime, that fearing he knew not what, he would ruine the Common-wealth, and Butcher vp his Children, as he had done before: These speeches had diuers effects both with *Mengrelius* and *Trezoboro*, the father assuring it a practise of defamation, and the sonne suspecting his fathers crueltie; which was the more greeuous vnto him, because he had deserued so well: so that now to secure himselfe he was enforced to stand on his Guard, and that incited the *Emperor* to proclaime him Traitor, the seueritie of which edict deuided the kingdome, and an vnnaturall Cruell warre ensued, wherein many stratagems and Turmoyles dislocated the Pillars & stayes of the *Empier*: for *Mengrelius* with his yeeres grew wilfull, irregular, and dangerous, mistrusting his most trusty Seruants; and when any dared to request a Pacificati-

Trezoboro in Armes & proclaimed Traytor.

on,

on, he would not abide it. His Mother and Wife were irkſome, and all things at home framed themſelues to the vnframing his quiet. Abroad he was ſure the Cities would regard their preſeruation to come. The diſcontented perſons would adhere to his Sonne, as well to auoyde the Lawes penall againſt them, as in hope of recompence and reward. The Noble men and Gentrie, by reaſon of former neglect, would queſtionleſſe make themſelues acceptable to the *Prince*. Some yet aduanced, would not degenerate: and others in Office or Account, for their own ſafeties would continue alleageance: with theſe, & ſuch, whom the very name of *Emperor* muſtred vp, he made an ouer-maiſtring party, and in his owne perſon performing actions beyond expectation, ſtrengthned the opinion of ſuch, as ſtood wauering betwixt duty and pitty.

But when *Trezoboro* perceiued, that hee which ſtandeth onely on defence, is farre from Victorie, hee then ſhewed his Father the force of a mighty Arme; with which he held out a long time: but at laſt, was compelled to retire to *Pelagium*, a place deſigned him for his Eſtate, and conuenient for Victualing and relieuing his Armie. Hither did *Mengrelius* proſecute him, and *Trezoboros* flight ſomwhat ouerſwayed the common opinion, neuer certaine, but in vncertainties; ſo that the *Emperor* ſeemed cheared with his good proceedings, & his Sonnes tryall; whereupon ſomewhat cunningly thinking to preſſe the Enemie, while they were

yeelding

yeelding, hee proclaymed Pardon to all thoſe, which would forſake the Prince: the reſt he denounced guiltie of the Crime of *Maieſtie*: Then ſeemed he to dally with crueltie, promiſing one hundred Tallents to any would bring him in dead or a liue: and laſt of all, encountred with his forces to great aduantage, which *Trezoboro* perceiuing would in time worcke him out, and that his retardance gaue libertie for a *Ruſſian* Armie to helpe his father, he diſpatched a meſſenger to *Anzitemus*, and an other to *Opacus* of *Capadocia*, who by reaſon of the *Emperors* ieloſie and ſtomach againſt them, as the cauſes of his feare, were not vſed, nor ſent vnto in their late troubles, and therefore conceiuing they were neglected or deſpiſed, a diſpleaſure aroſe againſt *Mengrelius*, and this opportunitie made them the willinger to ioyne with the Prince: eſpecially *Anzitemus*, who with foure legions of old ſoldiers came in perſon to his ayde: as for *Opacus*, from *Phrigia*, *Lidia*, and his owne kingdome, he made an Armie of one hundred 20. Thouſand, and gaue the Honor of their conduct to *Delano* a man of experience, great yeeres, and well beloued; yet ſuppreſſed from aduancement, by reaſon *Cuprax* the ſonne of the Duke of *Pantalia*, ſeemed a fauorite in Courte, and would haue drawne the managing of Martiall affayres to him ſelfe, had not *Trezoboro* by name entreated for *Delano*, and the Soldiers compelled out of their Country diſclaimed any other.

Bur

BVt when *Mengrelius* vnderſtood, that *Anzitemus* was come himſelfe, a ſodaine trembling diſproportioned his former Courage, and the Oracle (like a helliſh viſion appearing) mightely perplexed him, and was indeed the author of ſtrange courſes, which at laſt otherturned his good ſucceſſe, yet he went orderly to worke, and encountred with the *Armenians*, before they were vnited to his ſonns forces, who had much a doe to make their paſſage by reaſon the Boates were not yet come from *Trezoboro*, and *Anzitemus* had commaunded, that no man ſhould lay violent handes on the Emperor, but this interception ended with the name of a ſkirmiſh: For *Anzitemus* with *Delanos* aſſiſtance quickely paſſed their Armie by a Bridge made of the Boates: and helped with great Furre-trees keeping equall diſtance of Twentie foote, and although the water was very broad; yet induſtry with the conueniencie of the place for woode, layed Plankes vpon the Beames, and ſo in one day both Horſe and foote paſſed ouer in a manner within ſight of the Enemie: For ſome two mile from the Riuer they had ſo entrenched the paſſages, that *Mengrelius* ſuppoſed they ment their to haue encamped, little thinking *Delano* played the Lapwing, who cryeth farthеſt from his Neaſt: and when he ſeemed moſt buſie to fortefie a place of ſecurytie, the maine Armie marched that night vnder a Woodes ſide to the Riuer,

Anzitemus ioyneth with Trezoboro: killeth Mengrelius, fulfilleth the Propheſie, & inueſteth Trezoboro Emperor.

uer, and the next day put ouer, while the *Trebizondians* prepared againſt the Campe, which they ſuppoſed was ſo neere them: But being thus diſappointed, they had liberty to complaine, but ſmall meanes of reuenge, onely the *Emperour* vnited his Forces againe, and aſſured he was better prouided, determined to dally no longer, but put it to a triall; wherein if Fortune fayled, he was certaine to weaken the Aduerſarie, and renew his owne Armie at pleaſure; and ſo one day might affoord, what another did deny.

By this time is *Anzitemus* and *Delano* welcommed by the *Prince*, who hoping by courſe of pacification to end the Warre, ſent to *Mengrelius* by faire intreaty not to conceiue ſo hardly of ſo worthy a ſonne, and they would engage their Honor, he entended nothing but fayth and dutie: this meſſage wrought no otherwiſe, then if *Trezoboro* would abſolutely committe himſelfe to his fathers tuition without hoſtage or other couenant, it might be the *Emperor* would forgiue him, to this *Anzitemus* oppoſed, yeelding many reaſons, and by a ſecond treatie vrged the burying vnder foote of all diſpleaſures, the remiſſion and reſtoring his followers, and the confirming him Heire apparant. Heere againe *Mengrelius* diſdained to be abridged of his will, or courbed by his ſonne & ſubiects, whereupon defiance was proclaimed on all ſids, and a day appoynted to entertaine deſtruction with ſolemnitie: at which time *Anzitemus* tryed another way to appeaſe theſe miſcheefes, by ſommoning

moning the Armies to audience, and the *Emperour* to vnderſtand, what muſt be truſted vnto. To this, the feare of the Souldiers, rather then his owne willingneſſe, compelled him: and ſo *Anzitemus* in the front of his Armie thus deliuered his minde.

I am not ignorant (great *Emperour*, and mis-led people) that Wiſedome and good Counſaile are ſometimes vnſeaſonable, eſpecially in a time of fury & hate amongſt men of Warre, commaunded and countenanced by the Kings owne perſon; yet haue you no ſuch cauſe either to put in armes theſe men, or Armed to make them butcher themſelues: For though the Father fight there, the Sonne is not abſent heere: though the elder Brother vnderſtanding not the truth, is with *Mengrelius*, the younger attendes on *Trezoboro*: And though a Friend is enroulled with you, one of the Family is amongſt vs: and were not this lamentable, though neceſſitie compelled it? But now to proceed with out order, ground, or reaſon, what ſcandall can be more opprobrious? What cauſe more deteſtable? All men haue written, that Violence continues not: yet haue you begun in the Cradle, and are not appeaſed after many yeares: and why? the *Emperour* is terrefied with an Oracle, and ſuſpects his owne Children. Hath the Gods preſerued them for this? Hath his Towardlineſſe deſerued this? Hath his Valloure in your late Broyles been ſhewed for this? Hath his Life been ſo often hazarded for this? Hath your Peace been wrought for this? Hath

" your Proſperitie followed for this? Yea, hath Stran-
" gers been aſhamed of the Compoſition; and the
" mighty *Kalucki* receiued him to fauour for this?
" And will now the Common-wealth teare her
" owne Bowels? the Members ſeeke their owne de-
" ſtruction by deſpiſing the Head; and the Father
" murder his owne Child? It is execrable and ab-
" hominable. But touching the Propheſie, to be-
" leeue it not, what needeth this feare? To beleeue
" it, what way of preuention? But you will ſay, it is
" ambiguous. I reply, Malice muſt not miſconſture,
" nor Wiſedome be ouerruled with Suppoſes. For
" concerning the *Prince*, (by the Deuine power
" which ruleth all Princes) you can alleadge neither
" cauſe, reaſon, nor likelihood. How then haue you
" wronged your Renowne, and inforcered their
" Obedience? elſe would they neuer conſent to de-
" ſtroy one another, to ruine their Countrey, make
" hauocke of their owne increaſes, ſee & ſuffer miſ-
" chiefe to knocke at their doores; and with the Gi-
" ants fight againſt Heauen: or like that vnnaturall
" Bird, deuowring them that hatcheth her; ſeeke to
" deſtroy the Succeſſor, on whoſe ſafetie dependeth
" all their liues. Leaue off therefore for ſhame: leaue
" off; either yeeld a reaſon of your actions, or deſiſt
" from your vnreaſonableneſſe? But you will an-
" ſwere, It is ſufficient the *Emperour* commaundes.
" I doe ſay no; hee is but the Steward of the Gods,
" ſubiect to account; and ordained to forme, not diſ-
" ſolue the Common-wealth.

But

But as a further vehemencie might haue agrauated the matter, the Souldiers began to repine, some demaunding whether the *Prince* rayſed the Warre, or deſired to ſaue him ſelfe? Some for what cauſe *Mengrelius* proſecuted his Sonne? Some ſtomaked to ſee inteſtine Diſsipation. Some hardly beleeued the *Prince* began Innouation, conſidering he was to expect the Kingdomes to floriſh hereafter. Some ſaid, though the *Emperor* were offended, the ſubmiſsion of a Sonne might appeaſe any Father. Some abſolutly denied to deſtroy the Prince, and the reſt liked not, a wiſe man to be caryed away with dreames or deuiſes, eſpecially when the ruine of the *Empire* muſt ſucceed: but *Mengrelius* enraged with this diuiſion exclamed only on dutie and alleageance threatning the reuolters with death, and attempting with ſtripes to terrefie diuers in the ſpeed of eſcape, but it ſmally preuailed. For the greateſt part fled a fore his face to his ſonne, which *Anzitemus* tooke the aduantage of and encountered with the reſt in ſollemne manner of hoſtillitie, ſo that a terrible fight began, and a little time ouerlooked a dangerous conflict: in which the victory was a mournfull Triumph: For it ended with the cryes and teares of *Orphanes* for their Fathers, Fathers for their Children, Brother for Brother, one Kinſman for another, and freend for freend: yea ſuch was the miſery and miſcheife of the error amongſt them, that a ſonne was found mourning ouer a Carkaſſe, whom he

had ſlaine, and perceiuing it his owne father after a ruthfull complaint, kild himſelfe: the horror of which ſight, daunted the ſtouteſt courage, and made them all cry out vpon the cauſe of their troubles; which *Anzitemus* tooke hold of, and knowing the Emperor had eſcaped (and as he afterward lernt) to *Samarchanda* with a quiet demeanor recalled them togeather, and though the Skirmiſh and their owne feares had diſperced them farre off: yet handled he the matter ſo well, that they were contented to returne; and finding *Trezoboro* as ſad for their greifes, as his owne miſfortune, which by his Honorable proteſtations in the neceſsitie to ſaue his life, and vnwillingneſſe to diſquiet ſo good ſubiects, they ſaw apparant, in ſo much that vnkind teares brake off the Princely diſcourſe: they ſhouted for ioy, and with a new Comicall applauſe ſware, they would obey no other Emperor then *Trezoboro*: as for *Mengrelius* ſeeing his ill diſpoſition had taught him the way to Tyranie, they ſawe no reaſon to betray vertue, or be in ſubiection any longer to inhumanitie. Surely ſayed *Anzitemus*, the Gods haue taken compaſſion vpon you, and you and we will now be one body, but of neceſsitie the body muſt haue a head, or elſe the Members periſh, therefore we will inueſt *Trezoboro* your Emperor, and he ſhall renew your peace and comfortes: This (as according to their owne deſires) they ſoone conſented to, and ſo in midſt of all the Armie was he aduanced, inueſted, and ſolemnly proclaymed

proclaymed *Emperour* of *Trebizond*, and all the Kingdomes adioyning; *Prince* of *Peace*, *Lord* of the great *Sea*, and *Seruant* to the high *Gods*. Then ſange they a Himne in his honour to *Bellona*, and a Song to *Diana*. And laſtly, with *Panegericall* Ceremonies, they brought him to *Mengrelius* royall Tent, which the Souldiers had reuerently preſerued in the defeat. *Mengrelius deposed and Trezoboro choſen Emperor.*

But when vnfortunate *Periſtoll* (whom for his ill newes he commaunded to be ſlaine) had enformed the proceedings of the Campe, and that the Prince had taken vpon him the Diademne, neuer was impatience apter to be deſcribed: For now he raged indeed, and put in practiſe many actions of diſtemperature, as aſſuring him ſelfe the Oracle was compleat; onely the laſt poynt (which was his death) yeelded more terrour in the ſuſpition, then a thouſand miſchiefes in full execution: Yet he lifted vp once againe the countenance of Valloure, and with his ſupply out of *Ruſsia*, many Mercenaries from *Scithia* and *Europa*, and the reſt, (worthy to be beloued for being true to their Maiſter,) hee ſet forward a mightier Armie then the firſt; which in ſhort time confronted his Aduerſaries, who were comming forward apace to take poſſeſsion of the Citties: So that nothing was to be expected, but forcible and confuſed Prophanation both of loue and dutie; wherefore they gaue Reuenge full ſcope to make one day of death for all: And the Battaile began with a horrible and impetuous

impetuous violence, wherein to see the distempred *Mengrelius* with a well graced fury whirling amongst the troupes, would haue pitied his degenerating humors, and admired his strength and valoure; but *Trezoboros* approache deuided these thoughts, who finding the *Emperour* enclosed to his great danger contrary to expectation, commaunded them to desist, and so yeelded him freedome to worke his madnesse on some other subiect. An other time *Anzitemus* chaunced where destruction indeed was comming apace, and deliuered him: which hee tooke in greater scorne, because the Souldiers cryed, See the kindnesse of *Trezoboro:* see the pietie of *Anzitemus*. But this I say caryed him to disdaine indeed; and perceiuing himselfe spared by speciall appoyntment, hee changed his Horse and Armour, comming into the Battaile vnknowne, (For by this time, neither Order nor Discipline serued) and determined to single out his Sonne, with such a minde, as a man after a solemne Vow, which he is resolued to keepe, endeuoreth to bring to effect. But *Anzitemus* (hauing seene *Perneades* sequester him selfe from the company, with purpose to draw foorth such men as he prouided in ambush) supposed the *Emperour* had been hee, and so encountred with him before the sodaine approch might strike a feare amongst the wearied, and already fainting troopes; and after a gallant Battaile, Death rushed in with a blow, which the King with both his hands

stroke

ſtroke at his head, whoſe ſteely Couert not firmely ſetled, yeelded to the violence; ſhewing that nothing in the world is permanent, nor any man in life ſecure: ſo the *Emperour* ſhruncke vnder the burden of this misfortune, & yeelded to an honorable vntimelines: which was the more lamentable, becauſe hee ſought the deſtruction of his Sonne, and came to a ruthfull end by his Daughters husband.

Mengrelius ſlaine and the Propheſie fulfilled.

But when *Anzitemus* had time to ouerlooke, and know it was *Mengrelius*, vnkinde remembrance confounded him with ſorrow at the accident, and curſed the hand, that yet pleaded ignorance in the deed; remayning confounded, vntill the rumour and entercourſe of people brought *Trezoboro* thither: at laſt came *Caliſthenes*, *Orchanes*, *Hardubax*: at laſt came the reſt; all more troubled with griefe, then proud of their owne quietneſſe: ſo that the Victorie repreſented variety of Diſcomfort, rather then ſolemnity of a Triumph: For what with recording thoſe many Vertues abounding in him, whereof euery one had bountifully participated; and the preſent ſpectacle ſo full of remorſe, they ſorrowed beyond meaſure, and *Trezoboro* was compelled to make his entrance into the *Empire* with incongruent demeanour, & had celebrated (if the State would haue permitted it) with one ſolemnity his fathers Exequies, and his owne Coronation. By this time, was the Oracle publiſhed abrod, & wiſedome interdicted an vnmeaſurable diſcomfort in a matter remediles, & appoynted inceitable: ſo to make a new account with delight, *Anzitemus* was importuned to ſend for *Brizaca*, leaſt ſhe were altogeather

depriued of that benefite, (which Children receiue from the knowledge of their Parents.) This asked a litle time of deliberation: but the importunities of the *Empresses* preuailed; so the charge of the Iorney was committed to *Philtranus* Prince of *Cilicia*: As for the Army, he deuided that into two parts, sending the one by land vnder the command of *Kazopletus*; the other by Sea with *Pelorus* sonne of *Pelorus*, *Artabazes* Admirall: both to remaine vndissolued, till hee him selfe returned; in the meane while, his Mother *Euphamia* to rest *Regent* by a new Commission.

These matters had the effect of diligence and loyalty, & *Philtranus* came fortunately into *Armenia*, & informed the *Queene* of all occurrents, with the plausible directions for her progresse to *Trebizond*. Heere the intermixtion of contraries, kept her from the full entertainement of ioy; so that her Fathers *Catastrophe* extinguished the delight of her Brothers aduancement: to which an other home mischiefe was added, the returne of *Cleonidas*, who presuming on the absence of *Anzitemus*, and the Naue vnder *Pelorus*, entred the Confines of *Armenia*, and attempted a ridiculous Inouation. But before we certifie this Aduenture, let vs see, how Fortune ouerlooked him in the danger after the Sea-fight with *Anzitemus*.

The story of Cleonidas after the Battaile with Anzitemus.

BY that time, *Cleonidas* and *Anzitemus* (through the effect of his diueliſh reuenge) were deuided, and their Ships burnt and dismembred, the horrible lamentation of so many men so many wayes yeelding vp the last powers of their soules, stroke

ſtroke him to the heart, and (becauſe his peſtilent humour had no ſubiect to worke vpon) it boyld within him like a Furnace, ouerheating all the partes of his body and minde, ſo that he could haue been contented to haue made his owne ſeperation, conſidering a guilty Conſcience laide open the records of ſo many faults: But euen when Death had been moſt beneficiall, the neceſsitie of Life, with the kindneſſe of the impartiall element, draue the vnfirme Seate wheron he ſate to another peece of a Shippe, from whence ouerburdned, hee ſaw fourteene caſt into the Sea, as ſuppoſing it the neareſt way to Heauen, through the reflexion the Heauens made in the Water: On this by great chaunce he got, and was toſſed too and fro with the Billowes, as if Deſtruction meant to make a Game of his danger: at laſt after two dayes, hee was driuen on a ſandie Iland not farre from the Continent of *Perſia*; wherein he muſ-d at his owne ignorance, that hauing ſo long time ſcowred all the coaſt of the *Hircanian* Sea, hee was yet vnacquainted with this place.

Heere a very inſtinct of Nature put him to his ſhiftes, and by ſtriking two Flintes on certaine Reeds lying in the place, he ſhuffled vp a Fire; whoſe effects made the returne of warmth and ſtrength, the maintainers of life: at which the inhabitants (who were onely Seruants and Officers attending on the Prieſtes heere liuing) woondred, who had preſumed without order of Ceremony, to diſhonour the place: For this was called the *Iland of Fire*, aud had two Chappels therein; one dedicated to *Vulcano*, the other to the

Sunne; in which after the *Persian* manner, the *Priestes* were appoynted to liue, who onely had power to giue leaue to the Inhabitants to make their Fiers for necessities sake; which yet was not done without presence of a Religious man: Whereupon they apprehended *Cleonidas*, and brought him to *Sicambus* the *Archpriest* in the same manner they found him: But when with an extraordinary courage in the *Sirian* language (because hee was to speake to a man of his profession) he discouered him selfe, and that *Sicambus* vnueiled his ignorance, remembring hee had seene him with *Astiages* in *Persia*, & by many meanes heard of his fame, he comforted him the best hee could; but the best he could, preuented not a strange Sickenesse, which with an vnkind detention kept him full two yeares retiered, and confirmed their opinion, which supposed him perished: in the end, the firmenesse of his compleat manhood, and well seasoned body, ouermaistred the tiranny, and he recouered both in health and reformation: for after his penitency had protested a remorce of the action against *Artabazes*, and abiured his ill manner of life; the religious Father cheared him with the comfort, which followes true repentance, and by examples confirmed his willingnesse to amendment. Vpon this, they appoynted to goe into *Persia*, and accordingly ariued at *Suziana* much about the time *Anzitemus* fortunes were published through *Asia*; which he rather woondred, then stomaked at, not doubting to make his peace and reconsiliation, which his hope supposed by *Zaleppos* meanes (when the *Persian* Embassadours went to *Armenia*)

menia)to bring to paſſe: But their returne certified *Anzitemus* ſlight anſwere in that behalfe, and hee ſmothered the indignation for a time; but vnable to ſuppreſſe it, gaue Libertie at laſt, to burſt foorth into flames of Deſpight,and in this manner proceeded.

Certaine ſummes of Mony disburſed for *Aſtiages*, he demaunded of the Queene *Roxana*: which awhile bred ſcruple and doubt, by reaſon of their Articles with *Anzitemus* and *Artabanus*; yet after a little debating, they were repayed with a plenary cancelling of all accounts: For being a matter chancing before this new Contract, and in her Fathers behalfe, ſhee thought it diſhonorable to trifle him out with deuiſes or excuſes. Many of his Souldiers ſetled in their Townes, which the haſt of his buſines permitted not to carry with him,he requeſted againe: This was left to their owne deſires, becauſe in this ſpace maried, and brought vp amongſt them, they would not ſeeme to baniſh them by compulſion: So the moſt of them louing Spoyles better then Pay, haſted to *Cleonidas*. With this Mony and this Supply, he departed to his owne *Iland*, and gathering his Friends and Confederats togeather, with fourty ſayle of well appointed Ships, and fiftie Hulks for the tranſportation of his Army, he tooke the aduantage of the Kings abſence in the *Trebizondian* Warres, and made ſpeed for *Armenia*, landing his Forces at ſuch time, as *Kazopletus* and *Pelorus* were returned from *Anzitemus*; and *Philtranus* came with directions to attende the Queene *Briſaca* to her Mother. But this they were ignorant of, and diuers vnſetled Humors, as idle perſons,

ſons, and endangered to the Law; vpon the rumour of *Cleonidas* ariuall, to the number of foureteene thouſand, made a head in nature of *Particeans*, and certified, they were ready, and reſolued to ioyne with him; for their hearts and diſcontentments, had engaged them already; as if they meant to giue this notice, that in the beſt Hiue there be Drones and robbers of them that labour: but as their willingnes ſet them forward, their forwardnes puld them backe, as diſordered without a Head, and hauing bad intelligence: For the vnlooktfor comming of *Kazopletus* ouertooke them with that ſpeed, that *Cleonidas* had ſcarce notice, before the diſtraction diſperſed and Iuſtice quickly ſcourged them all.

Thus was this fanaticall Company diſcomfited, and *Cleonidas* in a manner as ſoone ouerthrowne: For vpon report, how Miſchance had put on a double viſage againſt him, he made a retreat to his Ships; but ere he could houſe his men, *Kazopletus* by land, and *Pelorus* by Sea, had ſo hemmd him in, that though it prooued a gallant and tedious Skirmiſh, full of obſeruation and example; yet his Fleete was ſuncke and diſsipated, his Companies quite defeated, and him ſelfe taken priſoner, and ſent to *Sagarena*, where *Brizaca* kept her Court; but ſhee vnwilling to proceed againſt him without directions from *Anzitemus*, by the counſaile of *Euphamia*, committed him to Ward in the ſame place, where his Father had once beſiedged the beautious *Artaxata*.

When *Cleonidas* ſaw him ſelfe thus diſappoynted and captiued, and that the laſt Acte of his Tragedy was

in

in hand, to which the Gates of Shame and Death; or Death with the ſhame ſtood onely open, hee made it a matter of ſome repining: yet as a man of excellent Reſolution, hee neither ſeemed much diſmayed, or abated: For to complaine of Godes, or Men, of Fortune, or the World, he thought it a property of ſuch, as deſired to liue. Againe, to craue pardone, ſue to Friends, and make baſe Submiſsion, hee imputed to ſuch as feared to die; ſo that Death appeared now like a welcome Friend, if the reproch might be taken away, which made ſuch an impreſsion, that he proteſted *Anzitemus* ſhould not triumph in his diſgrace, nor vſe his liuing body contumeliouſly: yet when there ſeemed want of meanes to effect this glorious Acte (as hee ſuppoſed) beeing left deſtitute of all proviſion, hee then boyled for very rage, and was enforced to coole him ſelfe with a Cup of cold Water; which working a better temperature, ſomewhat reduced him, and then he reprehended his dulneſſe, that conceiued not the infinite wayes, whereat Death might make her entrance; wherevpon with circumſpecti on (as if Deſperatneſſe meant to intreat her contrary aduiſe) hee ſearched about the Chamber, at laſt finding a ryſing in the Wall, where a Flint ſhoued out his Corner, with a maine careere he daſhed out his braines, leauing rather example of Manhod, then Conſcience. *The death of Cleonidas.*

With the death of *Cleonidas*, remayned *Armenia* fully quieted, and *Brizaca* without further ſuſpition, might prepare for her progreſſe; to which the induſtry of *Philranus*, and the dutie of her Subiectes

aided

added outward Ritches and Pompe; nor was ſhee behinde them for State and Maieſtie: So that ſhee ſet forward to their Ioy and Amazement from whence ſhee came, & to their Delight & Contentment, to whom ſhee went. But when *Mazitemus* vnderſtood of *Cleonidas* death, hee tooke the newes (as it were in ill part,) becauſe hee thought him ſelfe diſappoynted of a great deale of Honour in the courſes meant toward him: yet ballanſing the aſſurance of his owne Peace and quietnes withall, hee gaue way to more ſeaſonable deſires, and ſeemed ſatisfied with the wantonneſſe of the time, and the pleaſure of the place, which delighted with varietie: ſo that if his owne importunities had not compelled his returne into *Armenia*, hee might very eaſily haue vſurped the felicitie of another Kingdome.

FINIS.

Scribimus indocti, doctiq; Poemata paſſim.